COLLOQUIAL CHINESE
The Complete Course for Beginners
Kan Qian

CDs and Cassettes available
This revised and extended edition of the best-selling COLLOQUIAL CHINESE is the ideal introduction to the language.

Specially written by an experienced teacher and native speaker for self-study or class use, the course offers you a step-by-step approach to modern spoken Mandarin Chinese. No prior knowledge of the language is required.

What makes COLLOQUIAL CHINESE your best choice in personal language learning?

- dialogues and vocabulary sections given in characters and pinyin romanization
- introduction to the art of writing Chinese characters
- full English translations of all dialogues
- Chinese–English and English–Chinese glossaries

By the end of this rewarding course you will be able to communicate confidently and effectively in Chinese in a broad range of everyday situations.

Two 60-minute cassettes (or CDs) are available to accompany COLLOQUIAL CHINESE. Recorded by native speakers, they will help you perfect your pronunciation, listening and speaking skills.

Kan Qian teaches in Oriental Studies at the University of Cambridge. She is the author of the COLLOQUIAL CHINESE CD-ROM.
The Colloquial Series

Series adviser: Gary King

The following languages are available in the Colloquial series:

* Afrikaans
* Albanian
* Amharic
* Arabic (Levantine)
* Arabic of Egypt
  Arabic of the Gulf
  and Saudi Arabia
* Basque
* Breton
* Bulgarian
* Cambodian
* Cantonese
* Catalan
* Chinese
* Croatian and Serbian
* Czech
* Danish
* Dutch
* English
* Estonian
* Finnish
* French
* German
* Greek
* Gujarati
* Hebrew
* Hindi
* Hungarian
* Icelandic
* Indonesian
* Italian
* Japanese
* Korean
* Latvian
* Lithuanian
* Malay
* Mongolian
* Norwegian
* Panjabi
* Persian
* Polish
* Portuguese
* Portuguese of Brazil
* Romanian
* Russian
* Scottish Gaelic
* Slovak
* Slovene
* Somali
* Spanish
* Spanish of Latin America
* Swahili
* Swedish
* Tamil
* Thai
* Turkish
* Ukrainian
* Urdu
* Vietnamese
* Welsh

Accompanying cassette(s) (*and CDs) are available for all the above titles. They can be ordered through your bookseller, or send payment with order to Routledge Ltd, 11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE, England, or to Routledge Inc, 29 West 35th Street, New York NY 10001, USA.

COLLOQUIAL CD-ROMs
Multimedia Language Courses
Available in: Chinese, French, Portuguese and Spanish
To my dear father and mother

给亲爱的父母

Andrew Brown, who has helped me throughout the writing of this book. Not only did he spend many hours polishing my English, but also put himself in the position of a learner for this book. The criticism and comments he made were extremely helpful in enabling me to search for the most appropriate way of expressing many language points. I am also very grateful to Matthew Crabbe, who gave me some very good and useful suggestions.

My special thanks go to Charles Forsdick, Dr. Rachel Rimmer, and Lucia Woods, who willingly gave hours of their time pointing out some of the chapters and provided very useful comments. I am indebted to Dr. Yip Po-Ching for his many helpful suggestions. I would also like to thank Alan Edmunds, Jonathan Culp, and Wu Zhongliang for their help in one way or another. Finally, I wish to thank the editors and the assistant staff concerned at Routledge for their constructive comments and support.
Acknowledgements

My gratitude goes to Andrew Brown, who has helped me throughout the writing of this book. Not only did he spend many hours polishing my English, but also put himself in the position of a learner for this book. The criticism and comments he made were extremely helpful in enabling me to search for the most appropriate way of expressing many language points. I am also very grateful to Matthew Crabbe, who gave me some very good and useful suggestions.

My special thanks go to Charles Forsdick, Dr Rachel Rimmershaw and Lucia Woods, who willingly gave hours of their time polishing some of the chapters and provided very useful comments. I am indebted to Dr Yip Po-Ching for his many helpful suggestions. I would also like to thank Alan Edmunds, Jonathan Culpeper, Wu Zhongtao, Dong Ming, Dr Mick Short and Li Man for their help in one way or another. Finally, I wish to thank the editors and the assistant staff concerned at Routledge for their constructive comments and support.
# Contents

## Introduction

1. **Chū cì jiànmìan**  
   Meeting someone for the first time  
   17

2. **Xìngmíng, guójì hé niánlǐng**  
   Name, nationality and age  
   34

3. **Zài gōngsī de jūhuì shāng**  
   At a company party  
   52

4. **Wèn shíjiān**  
   Asking the time  
   69

5. **Jiārén hé péngyǒu**  
   Family and friends  
   88

6. **Rìqí hé tiānqì**  
   The date and the weather  
   108

7. **Mǎi dōngxī (I)**  
   Shopping (I)  
   124

8. **Mǎi dōngxī (II)**  
   Shopping (II)  
   140

9. **Zài cānguǎn**  
   At the restaurant  
   159

10. **Wèn lù**  
    Asking for directions  
    178

11. **Mǎi qīchē piào hé huǒchē piào**  
    Buying bus and train tickets  
    195

12. **Zài fàn diàn**  
    At the hotel  
    209
Introduction

The Chinese language

Some people in the west think that the Chinese language is Cantonese whereas in fact Cantonese is just one of the eight major dialects of the Chinese language. Although different dialects differ immensely in pronunciation, they share the same written form. The Northern dialect (which has many sub-dialects under it) is spoken by 70 per cent of the Chinese population. Therefore, the standard language spoken nationally is based on the pronunciation of the Northern dialect. The name for this standard form is Putonghua (common speech) in mainland China, Guoyu or Huayu (national language) in Taiwan, Hong Kong, and other overseas Chinese communities, and ‘Mandarin Chinese’ in English-speaking countries. Other terms such as Zhongwen (Chinese) or Hanyu (Han language, Han Chinese making up 93 per cent of the Chinese population) are more formal and are often used among Chinese language learners. Native Chinese speakers often use the term ‘Zhongwen’ rather than Putonghua when they ask non-native Chinese speakers if they speak Chinese. Putonghua is taught in schools and spoken by television and radio presenters in mainland China, and it is the kind of spoken language which is most understood by Chinese speakers. This book deals with Putonghua.

Romanization

Various systems have been devised for transcribing Chinese sounds into the Latin script. The system used in this book is called pinyin. Pinyin was adopted as the official system in the People’s Republic of China in 1958, and has since become a standard form used by news agencies as well as educational institutions.
has now been adopted almost universally in the west for transliterating Chinese personal names and place names although in older books you may still find earlier romanization systems in use (e.g. 'Beijing' is the pinyin transliteration and Peking is the Wade-Giles transliteration). In mainland China, pinyin is used as a tool to teach the correct pronunciation of Putonghua to children starting school. In dictionaries pinyin is given next to the character to indicate the pronunciation. Many street signs in big cities in mainland China have pinyin directly underneath the Chinese characters.

### The speech sounds

Chinese is a vowel-dominated language. A syllable may consist of a single vowel, a compound vowel or a vowel preceded by a consonant. A compound vowel may consist of two vowels or a vowel with a nasal sound, which is treated as one unit. This is probably why consonants are called ‘initials’ (shengmu) and vowels are called ‘finals’ (yunnu) in Chinese. Every syllable is represented by a Chinese character. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sound</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>hungry</td>
<td>ai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ke</td>
<td>to be thirsty</td>
<td>tang</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 Initials

There are twenty-three initials (some people regard w and y as semi-vowels), in modern Chinese. Below is a table comparing the twenty-three initials with the English sounds. Some of the Chinese initials are quite similar to English sounds, others less so. Those which differ significantly from the nearest English sounds have explanations next to them. The letter in bold is the Chinese initial:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initial</th>
<th>Initial</th>
<th>Initial</th>
<th>Initial</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>zh</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like b</td>
<td>like j</td>
<td>like p</td>
<td>like m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in bed</td>
<td>in jade</td>
<td>in poor</td>
<td>in me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zh like j in jade, but with the tongue further back</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ch like ch in church, but with the tongue further back, and the mouth in a round shape</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2 Finals

A final is a single vowel, or compound vowel or a vowel plus a nasal sound, i.e. n (like n in in) and ng (like ng in long). Altogether, there are thirty-six finals in Chinese. Below is a chart comparing the thirty-six finals with the English sounds. Some of the Chinese final sounds are quite similar to English sounds, others less so. Those that bear no resemblance have explanations next to them. The letters in bold are the Chinese finals:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sound</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>like a in father</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ai</td>
<td>between a and ei</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ao</td>
<td>like ow in how</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an</td>
<td>like an in ban</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ang</td>
<td>like on in monster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>like ir in Sir</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ei</td>
<td>like ay in lay</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en</td>
<td>like en in tender</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eng</td>
<td>like un in hunger</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>er</td>
<td>combination of ir in Sir and the retroflex r (er is never preceded by initials)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
i like ee in bee (after initials such as b, p, d, t, l, etc.)
when i follows initials z, c, s, zh, ch, sh and r, it is pronounced very differently from i preceded by b, p, d, t, l, etc. Try to get the initial sound right first and then keep the mouth shape of the initial and say i. Note that this i sound and the initial overlap greatly.

ia – combination of i and a
iaq like eow in meow
ie like ye in yesterday
iu like you
ian – like the Japanese currency word Yen
in like in in thin
iang like young
ing like ing in sline
iong – combination of i and ong
when i is not preceded by other initials at the beginning of a syllable, y replaces i, e.g. yan instead of ian, yao instead of iao
o like our in tour
ou like oe in toe
ong like ong in ding-dong
u like oo in too
ua – combination of u and a
uo like war
uai – combination of u and ai
ui like wai in wait
uan like wan in swan
un like won in wonder
uang like wan in wanting
when u is not preceded by other initials at the beginning of a syllable, w replaces u, e.g. wan instead of uan, wo instead of uo
ü like u in tu (French)
üe – combination of ü and a short ei
üan – combination of ü and a short an
ün like ‘une’ in French
when ü follows j, q, x and y, it is written as u without the two dots over it (but still pronounced as ü), e.g. ju, qu, xu, yun, yuan, etc. because u cannot occur after j, q, x and y

Although the above two charts should give you some guidance over the pronunciation, the recording is essential if you wish to achieve a more accurate pronunciation of these sounds.

**Tones**

Chinese is a tone language. In *Putonghua*, there are four tones, five if you include the neutral tone. Since there are only about 400 basic monosyllables which can be combined to make words in Chinese, the use of tones is one way of substantially increasing the number of available monosyllables. Every syllable in isolation has its definite tone. So syllables with different tones may mean different things although they share the same initial and final. For example: ma pronounced with the first tone means ‘mother’ but ma pronounced with the third tone means ‘horse’.

### 1 The four tones

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Pitch-graph</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(tone mark)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The first tone
The second tone
The third tone
The fourth tone

To illustrate these four tones better, let us first draw a short vertical line to represent the pitch variation within an average person’s voice range:

- **First tone** is a high, level tone. Pitch it at 5 and keep it at the same level for a while. It will look something like this in the pitch diagram:
Second tone is a high, rising tone. Pitch it at about 3 and raise it quickly. It will look something like this in the pitch diagram:

Third tone is a falling and rising tone. Start below 3 and let it drop nearly to the bottom and then rise to somewhere near 2.5. It looks something like this in the pitch diagram:

Fourth tone is a falling tone. It falls from 5 right to the bottom, 1. It looks something like this in the pitch diagram:

Tones are marked over the vowel (e.g. tā) or over the main vowel if it is a compound vowel (e.g. tāo). The main vowel is the one that comes earliest in this list: a, o, e, u, i, ü. Whenever there is no mark over the vowel, the syllable is a neutral tone.

2 Neutral tones

Some syllables in Chinese are in the neutral tone or toneless, i.e. they are pronounced weakly, which is like unstressed syllables in English (e.g. of in one of my friends). If there is no tone mark over the vowel, it means it is a neutral tone. Neutral tones are used in the following cases:

(a) Grammar words such as le, de (see ‘Word, word order and grammar’ below)
(b) The second syllable in some compound words: for example, wǒmen (we/us)
(c) A second syllable which is a repetition of the first one: for example, māma (mother/mum)
(d) The measure word ge when it is not emphasized: for example, sān ge yuè (three months) (see ‘Word, word order and grammar’ for ‘measure word’ below).

3 Tone change

In connected speech, tones change depending on the adjacent tones and meaning groups. Below are some basic rules of the tone change:

(a) When a third tone is followed by another third tone and they are in one meaning group, the first one changes to the second tone. For example, nǐ, hǎo, in actual speech, should be pronounced → Nǐ hǎo (Hello).

(b) When three third tones occur one after another and they are in one meaning group, the second one changes to the second tone whilst the other two remain the third tone. For example, wǒ, hén, hǎo, in actual speech, should be pronounced → Wǒ hén hǎo (I'm very well).

(c) In some compound words, although the second syllable, which is a third tone when used separately, has become neutral, it still carries enough weight to change the preceding third tone to the second tone. For example, xiǎo, jiě, in actual speech, should be pronounced → Xiǎojie (Miss).
(d) The first third tone remains unchanged:

(i) If the second third tone belongs to the next meaning group.
    For example, Qing gào su wǒ nǐ de diànhuà hàomǎ (Please
tell me your telephone number).
(ii) If a third tone is followed by a neutral tone and then
    followed by a third tone. For example, Tā xiě le xǐdúō xīn
    (She wrote many letters).

(e) When the negation word bù, which has the fourth tone, is
    followed by another fourth tone, bù changes to the second tone.
    For example, bù in Wǒ bù shì Zhōngguó rén (I am not Chinese)
    should be pronounced with a second tone.

(f) When the number word yī (one) is used in isolation or follows
    other syllables, it has the first tone (e.g. yī shì); but when it
    precedes first, second and third tones, yī usually changes to the fourth
    tone (e.g. yī xiě, yī diàn); and when yī precedes fourth tones, it
    changes to the second tone (e.g. yī lù, yī xià).

In actual conversation, tones are rarely given their full value. The
pronunciation of syllables, stress, context and facial expressions
would all help in conducting a smooth conversation. So, do not be
put off by the tones. If you listen carefully and mimic, you will be
able to pick them up eventually.

In this book, all the dialogues and texts in pinyin are marked
with tones. Those syllables which do not have tone marks are
neutral tones.

**Word, word order and grammar**

1 Word

Chinese characters are called zì. A zì is a character which consists
of one syllable. It is thus the building block of the Chinese language.
Some zì have meanings on their own (e.g. wǒ 我 means ‘I/me’) and others have to be used with others to form meaningful expressions (e.g. de does not mean anything on its own but it can be used to form other words such as wǒ de 我的 meaning ‘my/mine’).
The former are words whilst the latter are called ‘particles’ or
‘grammar words’ in this book. A Chinese word, therefore, can
consist of one syllable, two syllables or more than two syllables.

For example: xìng qì yì consists of three syllables and is represented
by three characters: 星期一

It means ‘Monday’. In some books, a space is always inserted
between two syllables. For example:

Jīn tiān shì xìng qì yì. Today is Monday.

In this book, for the convenience of English speakers, I have put
those syllables together which can be translated into one English
word. The above sentence in this book would be written as follows:

Jīn tiān shì xìng qì yì. Today is Monday.

2 Word order

In English, when you ask a question, you have to put the question
word first, and reverse the order of the verb and the noun
(e.g. Where are you going?). In Chinese, you use the normal word order
and say ‘You are going where?’. In English, one tends to put
the most important information at the end of a sentence (e.g. It is
very expensive to telephone China). In Chinese, the important
information or the topic of a sentence comes first. Thus you say
‘To telephone China very expensive.’ In English, time phrases such
as at 6 o’clock, tomorrow, occur at the end of a sentence (e.g. I’ll
finish my work at 6 o’clock). In Chinese, time phrases always occur
before the verb. Thus you say ‘I 6 o’clock finish work.’ These are
just a few major differences between English and Chinese in terms
of word order. There are many other differences between the two
languages which will be dealt with later in the book.

3 Grammar

Chinese grammar is still in the process of being perfected. However,
there are a few things you need to know before you start learning
Chinese:

(a) Nouns in Chinese are neither singular nor plural. Thus you say
    ‘one book’ and ‘three book’.
(b) Because of (a) above, verbs (i.e. doing words) have only one
    form. Thus you say ‘I be Chinese’ and ‘You be British’, ‘I go
    China’ and ‘He go China’, etc.
Verbs do not indicate past, present or future. Tenses are indicated by extra grammar words (or 'particles'), time phrases or context. Thus you say 'I go + grammar word + library', 'I yesterday go + grammar word + library', 'I tomorrow go library', etc.

Prepositions such as 'at', 'in', 'on' are not used before time phrases. Thus you say 'My mother Tuesday arrive.'

The largest unit, be it time or place, always comes first. Thus you say He January the 11th arrive', 'We from China Beijing come', etc.

There is something called the measure word to be used between a number and a noun. Different measure words are used for different nouns. Thus you say two + ben + book, but two + ge + people.

There is a grammar summary at the end of the book.

Chinese characters

Chinese characters are symbols used to represent the Chinese language. It is widely believed that written Chinese is amongst the world's oldest written languages. Its earliest written records can be traced back 3,500 years. Many of the earliest writings were pictures carved on oracle bones, known as 'pictographs'. Over the years, Chinese characters evolved from pictographs into characters formed of strokes, with their structures becoming systemized and simpler. Below are five different character styles showing the evolution of the characters for the sun and the moon into their present-day form:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stroke</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>横</td>
<td>Héng</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>From left to right (→)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>垂</td>
<td>Shù</td>
<td>Vertical</td>
<td>From top to bottom (↓)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>竖</td>
<td>Diǎn</td>
<td>Left-falling</td>
<td>From right to bottom left (←)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>撇</td>
<td>Piē</td>
<td>Left-falling</td>
<td>From left to bottom right (↘)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>捺</td>
<td>Nà</td>
<td>Right-falling</td>
<td>From top left to bottom right (↗)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>提</td>
<td>Tí</td>
<td>Rising</td>
<td>From bottom left to top right (↙)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>钩</td>
<td>Gōu</td>
<td>Hook</td>
<td>Various hooks, all made by bringing the pen downward first then adding a hook (some are made quickly and others are made slowly) (↓)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>折</td>
<td>Zhé</td>
<td>Turning</td>
<td>Various turnings, all made with a left to right stroke that turns downward at the end (some are made quickly and others are made slowly) (←→)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The total number of Chinese characters is estimated at more than 50,000, of which only 5,000–8,000 are in common use. And only 3,000 of them are used for everyday purposes.

1 Basic strokes

Most characters are made of two or more basic structural components (some character components can stand by themselves). These character components are limited and the basic strokes which form these components are even more limited. A stroke is a single unbroken line drawn by the writer from the time the pen touches the paper until the pen lifts off the paper. Below are the basic strokes:
Based on the above basic strokes, there are many other combinations such as

- ** héngpiē wāngōu**
  (horizontal plus left-falling plus slanting vertical hook),

- ** héngzhégōu**
  (horizontal plus turning hook),

- **shùwāngōu**
  (vertical plus right-turn),

- **shùzhézhégōu**
  (vertical plus horizontal plus vertical hook),

- **héngzhézhépiē**
  (horizontal turning, and another turning plus left-falling), etc.

### 2 Rules of stroke order

The chart below shows the rules regarding stroke order in writing Chinese characters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Stroke order</th>
<th>Rule</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>十人</td>
<td>十人</td>
<td>First horizontal, then vertical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>三</td>
<td>三</td>
<td>First left-falling, then right-falling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>问</td>
<td>问</td>
<td>First top, then bottom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>国</td>
<td>国</td>
<td>First left, then right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>小</td>
<td>小</td>
<td>First outside, then inside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Finish inside, then close</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Middle, then left, then right</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3 Radicals

Most of the modern Chinese characters are formed of two components: one is called the ‘radical’ (known as 部首 bùshǒu ‘common heads’ in Chinese), indicating the classification of the character, and the other is called the phonetic, providing a clue to its pronunciation. The radical can be the left part, the right part, the top part or the bottom part. For example

- **马 mǎ** (horse)

is a character in its own right but it is the phonetic for characters such as

- **妈 mā** (mother),

- **骂 mā** (to swear),

- **蚂蚁 máyǐ** (ant).

Let us look at the radicals for these three mas:

- **马 mǎ**
  horse

- **妈 mā**
  the woman radical

- **骂 mā**
  two mouths on top

- **蚂蚁 máyǐ**
  the insect radical

Overleaf is a table of some most commonly used radicals:
### When in isolation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>人</td>
<td>rén</td>
<td>people</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>金</td>
<td>jīn</td>
<td>metal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>心</td>
<td>xīn</td>
<td>heart</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>言</td>
<td>yán</td>
<td>speech</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>爪</td>
<td>zhǎo</td>
<td>hand, to knock</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>食</td>
<td>shí</td>
<td>food</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>女</td>
<td>nǚ</td>
<td>woman</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>火</td>
<td>huǒ</td>
<td>fire</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>足</td>
<td>zú</td>
<td>foot</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>立</td>
<td>lì</td>
<td>to stand</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>土</td>
<td>tǔ</td>
<td>soil</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>王</td>
<td>wáng</td>
<td>king</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>心</td>
<td>xīn</td>
<td>heart</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>水</td>
<td>shuǐ</td>
<td>tree</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>目</td>
<td>mù</td>
<td>eye/sight</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### When in combination

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>他</td>
<td>tā</td>
<td>he</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>汤</td>
<td>tāng</td>
<td>soup</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>冰</td>
<td>bīng</td>
<td>ice</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>热</td>
<td>rèn</td>
<td>hot</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>家</td>
<td>jiā</td>
<td>home</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>钱</td>
<td>qián</td>
<td>money</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>懂</td>
<td>dǒng</td>
<td>to understand</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>说</td>
<td>shuō</td>
<td>to speak</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>都</td>
<td>dōu</td>
<td>all</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>陡</td>
<td>dǒu</td>
<td>steep</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>很</td>
<td>hěn</td>
<td>very</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>握</td>
<td>gòu</td>
<td>dog</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>收</td>
<td>shōu</td>
<td>to receive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>爱</td>
<td>ài</td>
<td>to love</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>茶</td>
<td>chá</td>
<td>tea</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>饭</td>
<td>fàn</td>
<td>food</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>礼</td>
<td>lǐ</td>
<td>virtue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>遥</td>
<td>yuǎn</td>
<td>far</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>裙</td>
<td>qún</td>
<td>skirt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>痛</td>
<td>téng</td>
<td>painful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>妈</td>
<td>má</td>
<td>mother</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>灯</td>
<td>dēng</td>
<td>light</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>跟</td>
<td>gēn</td>
<td>to follow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>站</td>
<td>zhàn</td>
<td>to stand</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>地</td>
<td>dì</td>
<td>floor/earth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>球</td>
<td>qiú</td>
<td>ball</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>心</td>
<td>xīn</td>
<td>to think</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>林</td>
<td>lín</td>
<td>forest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>眼</td>
<td>yǎn</td>
<td>eye</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### About 2,000 characters have been simplified in mainland China since the founding of the People’s Republic so as to improve the literacy of the population. These 2,000 characters are called ‘simplified characters’ as opposed to ‘complex characters’ (also known as ‘traditional form’). ‘Complex characters’ are still used in Hong Kong, Taiwan and other overseas Chinese communities. In this book, emphasis is laid on simplified characters.

### Structure of this book

There are fifteen lessons in total. The lesson objectives are listed at the beginning of each lesson so that you know exactly what is expected of you. Each of the first fourteen lessons contains two situational dialogues. Lesson 15 has only one text, which takes the form of a personal letter. Most lessons have a character section which describes how to write some commonly used characters and sets out some character exercises. From Lesson 4 onwards character dialogues appear after the pinyin text and characters are also given next to pinyin in the vocabulary. It does not mean that you must learn characters at the same time. The choice is yours. Important language points which occur in each dialogue/text are explained with more examples in the ‘Notes to dialogue/text’ section. At the end of each lesson, there is a reading/listening comprehension section which reinforces what has been introduced earlier. There are also exercises in each lesson.

*Lessons 1–3: These dialogues and vocabulary are in pinyin. After each dialogue, there is an idiomatic English translation of the dialogue and the vocabulary.*
Lessons 4-5: Each dialogue is first in pinyin, then in character. After each dialogue, there is an idiomatic English translation of the dialogue. The vocabulary is in pinyin and character.

Lessons 6-15: These dialogues and vocabulary are in pinyin and character. However, there is no idiomatic English translation of each dialogue. You can find the English translation of those dialogues in Appendix D.

The key to all the exercises and the answers to the questions in the reading/listening comprehension in each lesson are given at the end of the book.

Finally, there are two points about the symbols used in the book: (a) the abbreviation ‘lit.’ means ‘literal meaning’; and (b) the apostrophe (’) is used to separate two syllables whenever there may be a confusion over the syllable boundary (e.g. qín’ài – n belongs to the first syllable not the second).

1 Chū cì jiànmíànm
Meeting someone for the first time

By the end of this lesson, you should be able to:
- say who you are
- greet people and respond to greetings
- ask, and respond to, some yes/no questions
- use some appropriate forms of address
- write your first Chinese characters

Dialogue 1
Nǐ hǎo How do you do?  

David Jones has just arrived at Beijing Airport. His potential Chinese business partner, Wang Lin, is there to meet him.

WANG LIN: Nǐ shì Jones xiǎoshēng ma?
DAVID JONES: Shì de. Wǒ shì David Jones.
Notes to Dialogue 1

1 Greetings

Nǐ hǎo (How do you do?/Hello) is the most common form of greeting in Chinese, which can be used at any time of the day. In response, the person being greeted replies by repeating Nǐ hǎo. Further greeting expressions will appear throughout the book. Note that whenever a third tone (e.g. nǐ) precedes another third tone (e.g. hǎo), the first third tone is changed to a second tone. Thus it should be pronounced Nǐ hǎo ... not Nǐ hǎo.

2 Names and forms of address

In Chinese, names always appear in the following order: surname, first name, title (when used). For example:

Wáng Lin – Wáng is the surname, and Lin is the first name;
Dèng Xiàoping – Dèng is the surname, and Xiàoping is the first name.

Colleagues and friends address each other either by full name (surname + first name) or by putting lǎo (old) or xiǎo (young/little) in front of the surname depending on the relative age and seniority of the speaker. For example:

A younger person (whose surname is Lǐ) may address a colleague (whose surname is Zhāng) who is in his/her fifties as Lǎo Zhāng to show respect. Conversely, Lào Zhāng can call this younger person Xiǎo Lǐ.

Sometimes, lǎo is used as a friendly term among men even in their thirties and forties to address each other. First names are used among families and close friends.

Titles like xīānshēng (Mr), nǔshì (Madam), xiǎojie (Miss) are seldom used among Chinese people in mainland China since 1949; but recently, because of the increasing number of tourists and close links with the west, these titles are increasingly used in business and tourist circles. Professional titles such as jīnglǐ (manager), jīăoshòu (professor), lǎoshī (teacher) are used as forms of address. When titles are used, first names are usually omitted. For example:
If someone is called Li Xinzi, and he/she is a teacher, this person can be addressed and referred to as Li láoshi (lit. ‘Li teacher’).

3 Personal pronouns wǒ and nǐ

Personal pronouns wǒ (I/me) and nǐ (‘you’ singular) can be used both as the subject and the object. Note the positions in the sentence. The subject comes before the verb; the object comes after the verb. For example:

Wǒ shì Wáng Lin. I am Wang Lin.

verb

Jiào wǒ Láo Wáng ba. Call me Lao Wang, please.

verb

Hén gāoxìng jiàndào nǐ. Very pleased to meet you.

verb

This rule applies to all other personal pronouns. Below is a full list of Chinese personal pronouns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wǒ</td>
<td>I, me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǐ</td>
<td>you (singular)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīn</td>
<td>you (polite form)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>he/she, him/her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wōmen</td>
<td>we, us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǐmen</td>
<td>you (plural)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāmen</td>
<td>they, them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As you may have noticed, ‘he’ and ‘she’ share the same pronunciation (but are represented by different characters). To make plural personal pronouns (e.g. ‘we’, ‘you’ and ‘they’), simply add men to singular personal pronouns wǒ, nǐ and tā. On its own, mén has the second tone, but becomes toneless in wōmen, nǐmen and tāmen.

4 Sentences with shì

One of the usages of shì (to be) sentences is to say who you are. For example:

Wǒ shì Zhāng Ping. I am Zhang Ping.

Tāmen shì Zhōngguó rén. They are Chinese.

Tā shì láoshi. He/she is a teacher.

As we can see, the verb shì remains the same in the above three sentences, which makes things less complicated. Thus we have:

Wǒ shì Zhōngguó rén. I am Chinese.

Nǐ shì Zhōngguó rén. You are Chinese.

Tā shì Zhōngguó rén. He/she is Chinese.

Wōmen shì Zhōngguó rén. We are Chinese.

Nǐmen shì Zhōngguó rén. You are Chinese.

Tāmen shì Zhōngguó rén. They are Chinese.

5 Yes/no questions with ma

To ask a yes/no question in Chinese (i.e. a question that demands the response ‘yes’ or ‘no’), all you need to do is to add ma at the end of a statement and speak with a rising tone as in English. There is no need to change the word order. For example:

Statement | Yes/no question
---|---
Nǐ shì Jones xiānshēng. | Nǐ shì Jones xiānshēng ma? Are you Mr Jones?
Nǐmen shì Zhōngguó rén. | Nǐmen shì Zhōngguó rén ma? Are you Chinese?
Tā shì Zhōngguó rén. | Tā shì Zhōngguó rén ma? Is he/she Chinese?

6 Verb-adjectives

In English, there are no verb-adjectives since adjectives can be preceded by the verb to be. However, in Chinese, some adjectives can incorporate the verb ‘to be’ and they become verb-adjectives. For example, the word láo is an adjective when it means ‘old’, but it is a verb-adjective when it means ‘to be old’. Note that the verb shì (to be) is not used in this case. When these verb-adjectives are used, they are usually modified by adverbs such as hén (very), tǐng (rather), etc. in front of them. Thus, we have:

Tā tǐng láo. He/she rather be old.

Lit. He/she rather be old.

Wǒ hén gāoxìng. I very be happy.

Lit. I very be happy.

Wǒ tǐng hāo. I rather be happy.

Lit. I rather be happy.
7 Use of qíng

When the word qíng (please) is used to invite someone politely to do something, as we saw in Dialogue 1, it is always placed at the beginning of a sentence/phrase. For example:

Qíng lái Zhōngguó. Please come to China.
Qíng jiào wǒ Lǎo Wáng. Please call me Lao Wang.

8 Use of ba

This word does not have any specific meaning on its own; however, if you place it at the end of a sentence/phrase, it makes whatever you say sound friendly and casual. It can be broadly translated as ‘please’ in these contexts. The difference between the word ba and qíng is that ba is placed at the end of sentences/phrases, and it is less formal. For example:

Jiào wǒ Lǎo Wáng ba. Call me Lao Wang, please.
Chī ba. Eat, please.

9 Adverb yě

The adverb yě (also) usually occurs before the phrase it modifies whether it is an adjective phrase or a verbal phrase. For example:

Wǒ yě shì Zhōngguó rén.
Lit. I also be Chinese.
I am also Chinese.

Wǒ yě hěn gāoxíng jiàndào nǐ.
Lit. I also very be pleased meet you.
I'm also very pleased to meet you.

Note that when three third tones are together and they belong to the same meaning group, the first and the last third tones remain unchanged whilst the second third tone changes to the second tone. Thus wǒ yě hěn in the above sentence should be pronounced wǒ yé hěn.

10 Verb huānyíng

If you want to say ‘Welcome to China’ in Chinese, you must use the structure ‘Welcome you come to China’. Thus, we have Huānyíng nǐ lái Zhōngguó.

Exercises

Exercise 1

Solve the problems:

(a) How many ways can you think of to address the following:
   (i) a man named Zhāng Gōngmǐn, manager, whom you have just met, and who is older than you;
   (ii) a woman named Lín Fāng, single, whom you have known for some time on a strictly business basis, and who is younger than you;
   (iii) a very close friend whose name is Gōng Qībīn, and who is younger than you.
(b) It is late in the evening, you bump into your colleague, Wáng Línlín, and want to greet him. What do you say?
(c) If you meet a Chinese person for the first time, after the initial how-do-you-do greeting, what else can you say?

Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks:

(a) Wǒ ______ (to be) Táng Píng.
(b) Wǒ hěn gāoxíng jiàndào ______ (her).
(c) A: Nǐ shì Wáng Lín ma?
   B: ______ (Yes).

Exercise 3

Turn the following statements into yes/no questions using ma:

(a) Nǐ shì Wáng xiānshēng.
(b) Tā (Hēshe) hěn gāoxíng jiàndào nǐ.
(c) Tāmen (They) lái Zhōngguó.
Dialogue 2
Ni lei ma? Are you tired?

After their initial greetings, Lao Wang and David move on to talk about the trip.

11. Possessive pronouns (e.g. "my", "his", etc.)

Below is a comparison of Chinese and English possessive pronouns and possessive adjectives.

Possessive pronouns (in front of nouns) and possessive adjectives (at the end of the sentence). For example:

- Chinese: Xiao Li de kafei. This is Xiao Li's coffee.
- English: This is my coffee.

Possessive pronouns are different from possessive adjectives in Chinese.

You must also add "de" to a person’s name to indicate the relationship between the person and an object. For example:

- Chinese: Ni yi lei ma? You’re tired?
- English: Are you tired?

Notes to Dialogue 2

Simply add "de" to the personal pronouns "ni", "ta", etc., to form possessive pronouns and possessive adjectives. In English, possessive adjectives are different from possessive pronouns (e.g. "my" in front of nouns and "mine" at the end of the sentence), in Chinese, however, they are the same. For example:

- Chinese: Xiao Li de kafei. This is Xiao Li's coffee.
- English: This is my coffee.

Vocabulary

shuai
trip, journey [lit. one road, or "whole way"]

Exercise 4

Re-arrange the word order of the following three groups so that each group becomes a meaningful sentence:

(a) han yu jin shi, zao shi yu zao
(b) ting jiao, david wo yi lei
(c) lai, zhong guo, ni huan ying

yue sheng
to be smooth

Sometimes, de can be omitted. Thus we can say Nǐ de yī lù shūnli ma? or Nǐ yī lù shūnli ma? (Was your journey smooth? Did you have a nice journey?). Please note that the word de is toneless.

12 Two verbs occurring in the same sentence

Whenever there are two or more verbs occurring in the same sentence or phrase, merely put them together. There is no link word ‘to’ to be used. Also remember that the verbs remain unchanged regardless of the pronoun as we saw earlier in Note 4. For example:

Wǒ xiǎng jiào Wáng Lín ‘Lào Wáng’.
I want to call Wang Lin ‘Lao Wang’.

Tā xiǎng hě yī běi kāfēi.
Lit. She would like drink one cup coffee.
She’d like to have a cup of coffee.

Note that the verb xiǎng means ‘to want’ or ‘would like to’ only when it precedes another verb.

13 Negation word bù

To negate a verb, verb-adjective or the adverb ‘hěn’, simply put bù in front of them. For example:

Wǒ bù shì Wáng Lín.
verb
Lit. I not be Wang Lin.
I am not Wang Lin.

Note that the word bù carries the fourth tone. However, when bù is followed by another fourth-tone word, it should be pronounced with the second tone.

Tā bù xiǎng lái Zhōngguó.
verb1 verb1
Lit. He not want come to China.
He doesn’t want to come to China.

Tāmen hěn bù gāoxìng.
verb-adjective
Lit. They very not be happy.
They are very unhappy.

Tāmen bù hěn gāoxìng.
adverb
Lit. They not very be happy.
They are not very happy.

Note that Tāmen hěn bù gāoxìng differs in meaning from Tāmen bù hěn gāoxìng. The former negates the verb-adjective whilst the latter negates the adverb hěn.

14 Responding to questions ending with ma

In English, yes/no questions are so called because the answers to them almost always involve a yes or a no. However, in Chinese, shì de (yes) and bù shì (no) are not often used. They are definitely used if the verb shì is in the question. For example:

A: Nǐ shì Jones xiānshēng ma? A: Are you Mr Jones?
B: Shì de. B: Yes.
or Bù shì. No.

When the verb shì is not in the question, usually the main verb/verb-adjective which occurs in the question is either repeated in the answer for ‘yes’ or negated for ‘no’. For example:

A: Nǐ lèi ma? A: Are you tired?
Lit. You be tired [yes/no question word]?
B: Hěn lèi. or Bù lèi. B: Yes, very tired./No.

A: Nǐ xiǎng hě kāfēi ma?
Lit. You want drink coffee [yes/no question word]?
Would you like to have some coffee?
B: Xiǎng, xièxiè. or Bù xiǎng, xièxiè.
Lit. Want, thank thank.
Not want, thank thank.
Yes, thank you. No, thank you.

Note, if you want to say ‘Yes, please’ in Chinese, add xièxiè (thank you), not qǐng (please), after the verb. The word qǐng is used for different purposes (see Note 7 above).
15 Tài . . . le

The word tài by itself means 'too' (as in 'too sweet', for example). It has to be used in conjunction with le to mean 'extremely' or 'very much'. The word le does not mean anything by itself. Note that you need to put the adjective or the verb (sometimes a verbal phrase) you want to modify in between tài and le. For example:

Tài hào le.  
adjective

Tài xiăng le.  
verb

Wǒ tài xiăng hē kāfēi le.  
I'd very much like to have a coffee.

verb phrase

However, the word le is omitted when the negation word bù is used. For example:

Bù tài lèi.  
Not too tired.

Bù tài shūnli.  
Not too smooth.

Exercises

Exercise 5

(i) Use the question word ma to ask Lao Wang whether:
(a) he is tired
(b) he is happy
(c) he would like to have a coffee
(ii) to pretend that you are Lao Wang, and answer the questions first in the positive and then in the negative.

Exercise 6

Complete the following exchanges:
(a) A: Nǐ hǎo.
B: ____________ (Hello).
(b) A: Xièxiè.
B: ____________ (You’re welcome).
(c) A: Nǐ shì Wáng Lín ma?
B: ____________ (Yes). Wǒ shì Wáng Lín.

(d) A: Zhè shì nǐde kāfēi ma?
B: ____________ (No). Zhè shì Lǎo Wáng de.
(e) A: Nǐ xiǎng hē kāfēi ma?
B: ____________ (Yes, please).

Exercise 7

Use the word bù to negate the following sentences:
(a) Lǎo Wáng xiǎng hē kāfēi. (Lao Wang does not want to have coffee.)
(b) Dávíd hěn gǎoxíng. (David is not very happy.)
(c) Dávíd hěn gǎoxíng. (David is very unhappy.)
(d) Wǒde yīlù hén shūnli. (My trip was not very smooth.)
(e) Wǒde yīlù hén shūnli. (My trip was very rough.)
(f) Tā shì Jones xiānshēng. (He is not Mr Jones.)

Exercise 8

When the question Nǐ lèi ma? is asked, how do you respond if you are:
(a) very tired
(b) a little bit tired
(c) not too tired

Exercise 9

Fill in the blanks:
(a) Zhè bù shì ______ (my) kāfēi. Zhè shì ______ (his) kāfēi.
(b) ______ (her) kāfēi bù tài hǎo.
(c) Zhè bù shì ______ (mine). Zhè shì ______ (Andrew’s).

Characters

Learning to write Nǐ hǎo (hello) and Zhōngguó (China)

Now, you may wish to try writing (or drawing!) the greeting expression Nǐ hǎo in characters. When Chinese children start writing characters, they use square boxes, and every box has a cross in the middle. Look at the boxes below:
The purpose of the box is to help them get the size and the proportion of the character right, and the purpose of the cross is to help them position the character in the middle of the box. Let us see how the two characters for 你好 look like inside these boxes:

你好

nǐ hǎo

It is a good idea to use these boxes when you first start writing characters. Let us now learn how to write 你好, step by step. The first character nǐ has seven strokes, which are written in the following order:

1 2 3 4 5

The left part of nǐ 亻is called the ‘person radical’ because it looks rather like the character for ‘person/people’ (pronounced rén). When rén is written in a box, we have:

人

The ‘person radical’ is used very often to form other characters, so you may wish to make a note of it.

The second character hǎo has six strokes, which are written in the following order:

1 2 3 4 5 6

Now, let us take hǎo apart. The left side 女 by itself means ‘woman/female’ (pronounced nǚ), and it is called the ‘woman radical’, and the right side 子 is a formal word for ‘son’ (pronounced zǐ). Can this possibly reflect a culture where a woman who can give birth to a son is regarded as being capable, and hence good? When these two characters are written independently, they look like this:

女士

nǚ zǐ

In effect, you have now learnt five characters. They are:

你好 人 女子

nǐ hǎo rén nǚ zǐ

you good/well person/female son

Let us now try to write Zhōngguó (China).

The word zhōng means ‘central’ or ‘middle’ by itself, and the word guó means ‘country’ by itself. So you now know what Zhōngguó really means! This is probably why China is often referred to in books and newspaper articles as ‘the Middle Kingdom’. They look like this in boxes:

中国
Now, let us take these two characters apart. The first one, Zhōng, has four strokes, which are written in the following order:

```
1 2 3 4
```

The second character, guó, has eight strokes, which are written in the following order:

```
1 2 3 4 5
```

```
6 7 8
```

The character inside 王 is pronounced yù by itself meaning ‘jade’. It looks like this in a box by itself:

```
王
```

A country may be interpreted as a place full of treasures such as jade surrounded by walls.

If you remember how to write rén (person/people) from page 30, you now know how to write Zhōngguó rén (Chinese) in characters.

```
zhōng  guó  rén
```

You may now wish to write these characters on flash cards with pinyin and English translations on the other side of the cards so that you can practice recognizing them.

**Reading/listening comprehension**

Read the following dialogue, and try to answer the questions below in English. If you have the recording, listen to it first (try not to look at the script) and then answer the questions in English.

**Zhang Ping (ZP) is at Beijing Airport meeting John Smith (JS) from Britain**

**ZP:** Nǐ shì John Smith xiānshēng ma?
**JS:** Shì de. Nǐ shì...?
**ZP:** Nǐ hào, Smith xiānshēng. Wǒ shì Zhāng Ping.
**JS:** Nǐ hào, Zhāng Ping. Jiào wǒ John ba.
**ZP:** Hǎo de, John. Hěn gāoxìng jiàndào nǐ.
**JS:** Wǒ yě hěn gāoxìng jiàndào nǐ.
**ZP:** Nǐ lèi ma?
**JS:** Yǒu yídàn lèi. Yīlù hěn bù shùnli.
**ZP:** Nǐ xiǎng běi kāfēi ma?
**JS:** Tài xiǎng le.

**Questions**

A  What does John Smith prefer to be called?
B  Did John Smith have a pleasant trip?
C  What suggestion does Zhang Ping make?
D  What is John Smith’s response to Zhang Ping’s suggestion?
2 Xíngmíng, guójí hé niánlíng
Name, nationality and age

By the end of this lesson, you should be able to:
- say what your name is
- say what your nationality is and whereabouts you come from
- say how old you are
- ask other people questions regarding the above three subjects
- use some of the appropriate expressions to respond to compliments
- count from 0 to 99
- say goodbye
- write more characters and recognize one sign

Dialogue 1
Nǐ jiào shénme? What’s your name? ❄️

Amy, an American, is travelling in China. She sits opposite Fang Chun, a young Chinese man, on a train heading for Beijing. As Chinese people are very sociable, they soon strike up a conversation.

Fāng Chūn: Nǐ huì shuō Zhōngwén ma?
Amy: Hù shuō yǐdiǎn.
Fāng Chūn: Tài hǎo le. Wǒ jiào Fang Chūn. Jiào wǒ Xiǎo Fāng ba. Nǐ jiào shénme?
Amy: Wǒ jiào Amy.
Fāng Chūn: Nǐ shì Yīngguó rén ma?
Amy: Bù shì.
Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hui</td>
<td>can/to be able to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuō</td>
<td>to speak/to say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhōngwén</td>
<td>Chinese [as a language]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yìdiān</td>
<td>a little bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāi hǎo le</td>
<td>wonderful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎo</td>
<td>young/small/little/to be young/to be small/to be little</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shénme</td>
<td>what</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yíngguó</td>
<td>Britain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rén</td>
<td>person/people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yíngguórén</td>
<td>British [lit. ‘Britain person/people’]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǎ</td>
<td>which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guó</td>
<td>country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cǎi</td>
<td>to guess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhīdào</td>
<td>to know/to be aware of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Měiguórén</td>
<td>American [lit. ‘America person/people’]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǎli</td>
<td>where/whereabouts [see Note 6]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Běijīngrén</td>
<td>Beijingsese [lit. ‘Beijing person/people’]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǎlí</td>
<td>not really/not at all [lit. ‘whereabouts’]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes to Dialogue 1

1 Use of hui

The word hui, known as an ‘auxiliary verb’ in grammatical terms, precedes other verbs to indicate whether a person has the ability to do something. To ask questions such as ‘Can you speak Chinese?’, simply add ma at the end of the statement. For example:

Statement: Susan hui shuō Zhōngwén.
Yes/no question: Susan hui shuō Zhōngwén ma? Can Susan speak Chinese?

To answer a yes/no question which involves the word hui, you say hui for ‘yes’ and bù hui for ‘no’. For example:

A: Amy hui shuō Zhōngwén ma? Can Amy speak Chinese?
B: Hui.
Yes. She can.

2 Difference between yìdiān and yǒu yìdiān

In Dialogue 2 of Lesson 1, we had the expression yǒu yìdiān (a little bit). There is no difference in meaning between yìdiān and yǒu yìdiān: however, yìdiān is usually used after the verb, and yǒu yìdiān (yī can be omitted here) is used before the verb–adjective. For example:

Tā hui shuō yìdiān Yingwén. verb
He/she can speak a little bit of English.

Wǒ yǒu yìdiān (or yǒu diān) lèi. verb–adjective
Lit. I a little bit be tired.
I’m a bit tired.

3 Question word shénme

When shénme (what) is used in a question, it occurs in the same place as where the information required should appear in the reply. For example:

A: Nǐ jiào shénme?
Lit. You be called what?
A: What’s your name?

B: Wǒ jiào Lin Hóng. Lit. I be called Lin Hong.
B: My name is Lin Hong.

This rule applies to the positioning of all the question words.

4 Nǐ jiào shénme?

When you ask a Chinese person Nǐ jiào shénme? (What is your name?), you are usually given the full name (i.e. surname + first name). If you simply want to find out someone’s surname, you
ask Nǐ xìng shénme? (lit. ‘You are surnamed what?’). If you want to be really formal, you ask Nín guì xìng? (lit. ‘You honourable surname?’). The personal pronoun nǐ is a polite form of nî (you).

5 Question word nà

Whenever the question word nà (also pronounced néi by some people) precedes nouns, such as guó (country) in Dialogue 1, it means ‘which’. For example:

Nǐ shì nà guó rén?
Lit. You be which country person?

6 Question word nàli

The question word nàli (where/whereabouts) is used if you already know someone’s nationality, but want to find out whereabouts this person originally comes from. For example:

A: Nǐ shì Zhōngguó nàli rén?
Lit. You be China whereabouts person?

B: Shànghāi rén.
Lit. Shanghai person.

Note that both nà and nǐ carry the third tone in isolation. Although nǐ becomes toneless when used with ná, it still changes ná into the second tone in actual pronunciation.

7 Names of countries

Names of countries are translated into Chinese arbitrarily. Some of them are based on the pronunciation, but others are not. Some of them have the word guó (country) in them, but others do not. By adding rén (person/people) to country/place names, we refer to the people who live in that country/place. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country/city</th>
<th>Its people</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fāguó</td>
<td>法国</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dēguó</td>
<td>德国</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Áodaíyà</td>
<td>澳大利亚</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xinxián</td>
<td>新西兰</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ribén</td>
<td>日本</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xinjìāpō</td>
<td>新加坡</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taiwán</td>
<td>台湾</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xiāng Gāng</td>
<td>香港</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yídàì</td>
<td>意大利</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lúndūn</td>
<td>伦敦</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country/city</th>
<th>Its people</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fāguórén</td>
<td>法国人</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dēguórén</td>
<td>德国人</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Áodaíyàrén</td>
<td>澳大利亚人</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xinxiánrén</td>
<td>新西兰人</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ribènrén</td>
<td>日本人</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xinjìāpórén</td>
<td>新加坡人</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taiwánrén</td>
<td>台湾人</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xiāng Gāngrén</td>
<td>香港人</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yídàirén</td>
<td>意大利人</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lúndūnrén</td>
<td>伦敦人</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8 Ways of referring to different languages

To refer to the language spoken in a particular country, in most cases, you can add either wén or yǔ (language) to the first syllable of a country’s name or add huà (speech/talk) to the whole name of a country. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Its language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yingguó</td>
<td>英国</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fāguó</td>
<td>法国</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dēguó</td>
<td>德国</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ribén</td>
<td>日本</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

However, this rule does not apply to some countries. For countries such as Italy and Spain, you must add wén, yǔ or huà to the whole name of the country. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Its language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yídàì</td>
<td>意大利</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xibányá</td>
<td>西班牙</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are many ways of referring to the (Mandarin) Chinese language. These include: Hányǔ (literally ‘hán language’ since the hán Chinese race comprises the vast majority of the population); Zhōngwén (a more formal term); Zhōngguóhuà (a less formal term); Pǔtónghuà (lit. ‘common speech’, which is the Modern Standard Chinese); Guóyǔ (used in Taiwan, lit. ‘national
9 **Use of zhídào**

The verb *zhídào* (to know/to be aware of) is mostly used to talk about things you know or people you know of but not personally. It can be followed by a noun phrase or a sentence. For example:

**Nǐ zhídào tā jiào shénme ma?**

*Lit.* You know he/she be called what [question word]?
Do you know what he/she is called?

**Wǒ bù zhídào nǐ shì nǎ guó rén.**

*Lit.* I not know you be which country person.
I don’t know which country you come from.

Compare the sentence order of *tā jiào shénme* and *nǐ shì nǎ guó rén* after the verb *zhídào* to that of the questions *Tā jiào shénme?* (What is he/she called?) and *Nǐ shì nǎ guó rén?* (Which country are you from?) in Notes 3 and 5 above. You will notice that the sentence order is exactly the same.

10 **Polite talk** nǎlǐ, nǎlǐ

It is part of Chinese culture to be over-modest. When a person is complimented, he/she is supposed to deny the compliment. One of the expressions used on such occasions is *nǎlǐ*, meaning ‘not at all’ or ‘not really’ and it is usually repeated. Another way of responding to a compliment is simply to deny what has been said. For example:

**A:** *Nǐde Zhōngwén hěn hǎo.*
**A:** Your Chinese is very good.

**B:** *Bù hǎo, hù hǎo.*
**B:** Not good, not good.

---

**Exercises**

**Exercise 1**

Look at the maps and match the number of each country/region with the corresponding Chinese name listed below. Then translate each name into English:

(a) Rìběn  
(b) Fǎguó  
(c) Dēguó  
(d) Ædālíyà  
(e) Xiāng Gāng  
(f) Xīnxīlán  
(g) Xīnjiāpō  
(h) Yīdālǐ

**Exercise 2**

Give the Chinese terms for the people who live in the following countries/places:

(a) Britain  
(b) America  
(c) China  
(d) Italy  
(e) Taiwan  
(f) Hong Kong  
(g) Australia  
(h) Japan
Exercise 3

Give the Chinese terms for the language(s) spoken in the following countries/places:

(a) Britain  (c) China  (e) Taiwan  
(b) America  (d) Italy  (f) France  
(g) Hong Kong  (h) Japan

Exercise 4

You meet a Chinese person for the first time. What do you say to her if you want to find out the following?

(a) her name  
(b) whereabouts she comes from  
(c) whether she speaks English

Exercise 5

Fill in the gaps using yīdiǎn or yóu yīdiǎn:

(a) Amy shuō __________ Zhōngwén.  
(b) John __________ lèi.  
(c) Wáng Lín __________ bù gāoxìng.  
(d) Xiǎo Lǐ xiǎng hē __________ kāfěi.

Exercise 6

Complete the other half of the exchange:

(a) A: __________?  
 B: Wǒ shì Měiguórén.  
(b) A: __________?  
 B: Tā shì Běijīngrén.  
(c) A: Nǐ Zhōngwén hěn hǎo.  
 B: __________ (Not really.)  
(d) A: Nǐ huì shuō Riwén mà?  
 B: __________ (No, I can't.)

Exercise 7

Translate into Chinese:

(a) Do you know which country Amy comes from?  
(b) I cannot speak English.  
(c) She is not Japanese.  
(d) I don't know what he is called.

Dialogue 2

Ni duō dà le? How old are you? 

Amy and Xiao Fang get on very well with each other. The conversation becomes more personal

AMY: Xiao Fang, nǐ jīn nián duō dà le?  
Xiao Fang: Wǒ sānshí’ér sui le.  
AMY: Zhēn de? Nǐ kānshāngqu zhīyǒu ěrshí wǔ suì zuòyǒu.  
Xiao Fang: Guójìàng. Nǐ duō dà le?  
AMY: Wǒ ěrshíyī.  
AMY: Bù duì, bù duì. Nǐ shì ‘Xiao Fang’. (five minutes before the train arrives at Beijing, they say goodbye)  
Xiao Fang: Rènshì nǐ, wǒ hěn gāoxìng, Amy.  
AMY: Wǒ yě shì, Xiao Fang.  
Xiao Fang: Zāijiān, Amy.  
AMY: Zāijiān, Xiao Fang.  
AMY: Xiao Fang, how old are you this year?  
Xiao Fang: I’m thirty-two.  
AMY: Really? You look only about twenty-five.  
Xiao Fang: I’m flattered. How old are you?  
AMY: I’m twenty-one years old.  
Xiao Fang: You are really young. In that case, I should be ‘old Fang’.  
AMY: No, no. You are ‘young Fang’. (five minutes before the train arrives at Beijing, they say goodbye)  
Xiao Fang: I’m so pleased that I met you, Amy.  
AMY: Me too, Xiao Fang.  
Xiao Fang: Goodbye, Amy.  
AMY: Bye, Xiao Fang.
Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jīn nián</td>
<td>this year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duō</td>
<td>how</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dà</td>
<td>to be old/to be large/to be big/large/big</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le</td>
<td>[grammar word, see Note 13]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sānshì’èr</td>
<td>thirty-two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suì</td>
<td>years old</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhēn de?</td>
<td>really?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kànshāngqu</td>
<td>to appear/to seem/to look</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhíyòu</td>
<td>only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuòyòu</td>
<td>about/approximate [lit. ‘left right’]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guōjiāng</td>
<td>to be flattered [lit. ‘over-praising’]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ěrshìyì</td>
<td>twenty-one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhēn</td>
<td>really</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niánqìng</td>
<td>to be young/young</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhéme shuō</td>
<td>in that case [lit. ‘so speak’]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīnggāi</td>
<td>should/ought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūi</td>
<td>to be correct/ correct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bù dūi</td>
<td>to be incorrect/incorrect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rènshì</td>
<td>to know [somebody]/to get to know [somebody]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wǒ yè shì</td>
<td>me too/same here [lit. ‘I also am’]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zàijiān</td>
<td>goodbye [lit. ‘again meet’]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes to Dialogue 2

11 Nǐ duō dà le?

This question is used to ask about an adult’s age. Generally, Chinese people (including women!) are not offended by the question Nǐ duō dà le? (How old are you?). When the verb-adjective dà (to be big/old) is used in this context, it refers to someone’s age, not their size. The word lǎo (to be old) we learnt in Lesson 1 is not appropriate here because Nǐ duō lǎo le? implies that the person being asked does look very very old.

12 Numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0–9</th>
<th>10–19</th>
<th>20–29</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lǐng</td>
<td>zero</td>
<td>shí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yī</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>shíyī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>èr (liǎng)</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>shí’èr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sān</td>
<td>three</td>
<td>shísān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sì</td>
<td>four</td>
<td>shí sì</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wǔ</td>
<td>five</td>
<td>shí wǔ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lìu</td>
<td>six</td>
<td>shí lìu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qī</td>
<td>seven</td>
<td>qī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bā</td>
<td>eight</td>
<td>shí bā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiǔ</td>
<td>nine</td>
<td>shí jiǔ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Numbers 30, 40, etc. . . . 90 are formed by adding shí (ten) to sān (three), sì (four), etc. . . . jū (nine). Thus we have: sānshí (thirty), sìshí (forty), wǔshí (fifty), etc. The numbers 31–9, 41–9, etc., use the same principle as 21–9 above. An apostrophe ( ’ ) is used to mark the break between two syllables whenever there is ambiguity in pronunciation. Thus we have shí’èr (twelve) instead of shìér.

13 Grammar word le

This grammar word le (also called ‘past particle’) in this context suggests a change of state. For instance, when someone says Wǒ ěrshìyì suí le (I’m twenty-one years old), the speaker means that he/she has already become twenty-one (both suí and le can be omitted, but suí must be used if the age is less than ten). For example:

Mary sānshíbā. or Mary sānshíbā suí. Mary is thirty-eight.
Linlin wù suí. Linlin is five.

Note that (a) le must be used in the question Nǐ duō dà le? (How old are you?); and (b) in telling one’s age, the verb shí (to be) is not used.

14 Use of kànshāngqu

The usage of the verb kànshāngqu is very similar to the English verbs ‘to look’, ‘to appear’ or ‘to seem’ when they are used in affirmative sentences. For example:
18 Topic structure

It is very common, but not essential, in the Chinese language to put the topic of the sentence first. For example:

Rènshì nǐ, wǒ hěn gāoxìng.
topic
Lit. To know you, I very be pleased.
I'm very pleased to have met you.

Lái Zhōngguó, wǒ hěn gāoxìng.
topic
Lit. To come to China, I very be happy.
I'm so happy that I’ve come to China.

Exercises

Exercise 8

Describe Amy and Fang Chun – the two characters in this lesson (e.g. their nationality, age, etc.).

Exercise 9

Complete the other half of the conversation:

(a) A: Nǐ Zhōngwén hěn hào.
   B: ___________ (Not really).
(b) A: Bill duō dà le?
   B: ___________ (about 30).
(c) A: David shì Měiguórén.
   B: ___________ (Incorrect). Tā shì Yīngguórén.

Exercise 10

Fill in the blanks using rènshì (to know somebody) or zhídào (to know something):

(a) Wǒ bù ___________ tā hui shuō Zhōngwén.
(b) Xiǎo Fāng ___________ Amy.
(c) Tā bù ___________ Amy shì ná guó rén.
(d) Wǒ hěn xiǎng ___________ Xiǎo Fāng.
Exercise 11

Turn the following sentences into questions regarding the underlined parts (the underlined part is the information you wish to obtain):

Example: Amy shi Mèiguórén. → Amy shi nà guó rén?
(a) Tā jiāo Feng Chún.
(b) Xiǎo Feng shì Bēijīngrén.
(c) Amy jīn nián cānshì yī suì.

Exercise 12

Translate into Chinese:
(a) She doesn't look very happy.
(b) Simon looks very young.
(c) You look a little tired.

Characters

1 Learning to write:
(a) Wǒ shuō Zhōngwén (I speak Chinese)

There are four characters in this sentence and you will be pleased to know that we already learnt one of them in Lesson 1 (zhōng in Zhōngguó). This is how they should appear in boxes:

我说中文

wǒ shuō zhōng wén

Now let us write wǒ (I/me) first. It has seven strokes, which are written in the following order:

我 1 2 3 4 5 6

The verb shuō (to speak/to say) has two parts and consists of nine strokes in total. The left part, 说, is called the 'speech radical' which is used to form many characters concerned with speech and language. Let us see how shuō is written:

我 1 2 3 4 5 6

Since you already know how to write zhōng in Zhōngwén (Chinese language), let us move on to wén, which consists of only four strokes:

我 1 2 3 4

(b) Xièxié (Thank you)

The two characters representing xièxié are exactly the same. This is how they should appear in boxes:

谢谢
The character xiè, although appearing to consist of three parts, is treated for descriptive purposes as having two parts. The left part 

是 a 'speech radical', and the right part 射, pronounced shè, means 'to fire (e.g. an arrow)'. However, when you write this character, you must think of it as having three blocks. Each block takes up approximately the same space, which in total results in twelve strokes. These twelve strokes are written in the following order:

1 2 3 4 5 6
7 8 9 10 11 12

2 Recognize the following sign

The first sign we are going to try to recognize is Běijīng since this may be one of the first Chinese signs that greets your eyes when you arrive at Beijing Airport. Literally, Běijīng means 'north capital'. The characters look like this:

北京

Congratulations! Now you know more than a dozen Chinese characters, and you even know how to write some of them.

Reading/listening comprehension

1 Read the following dialogue, and try to answer the questions below. If you have the recording, listen to it first (try not to look at the script) and then answer the questions in English.

Two Chinese people, Meixin and Zhongtao are talking about someone

MÉIXÍN: Nǐ rènshī Oliver ma?
ZHÔNGTĀO: Rènshī.
MÉIXÍN: Tā shì nà guó rén?
ZHÔNGTĀO: Yingguórén.
MÉIXÍN: Tā hui shuō Zhōngwén ma?
ZHÔNGTĀO: Hui shuō yìdiān.
MÉIXÍN: Nǐ zhīdào tā duō dà le ma?
ZHÔNGTĀO: Bù zhīdào. Nǐ xiǎng rènshī tā ma?
MÉIXÍN: Tài xiǎng le.

Questions

A Does Zhongtao know Oliver?
B Which country is Oliver from?
C Does Oliver speak Chinese?
D Does Zhongtao know how old Oliver is?
E Does Meixin want to meet Oliver?

2 Read aloud the following phrases or words and add on the correct tone marks to reflect the change of tones in actual speech. If you have the recording, listen to it first, and then add on the correct tone marks. Just to remind you: (↑) first tone; (↑) second tone; (↑) third tone; (↑) fourth tone.

(a) xièxie (thank you) (b) bú zhīdào (do not know)
(c) bù dui (incorrect) (d) Yingguórén (British)
(e) shuō Zhōngwén (speak Chinese) (f) tài hǎo le (wonderful)
(g) zàijiān (goodbye) (h) wò yě shì (me too)
3 Zài gōngsī de jùhuì shang
At a company party

By the end of this lesson, you should be able to:
- exchange greetings in a more sophisticated way
- use some time-related phrases
- use question words nǎr (where) and shéi (who)
- use le to indicate a past action or an action which has taken place
- use some measure words
- negate some verbs with méi yǒu
- write more characters and recognize two useful signs and some numbers

Dialogue 1
Zěnme yàng? How are you? ☞

Rachel and Shulan are very good friends as well as knowing each other through business. Rachel also knows Shulan’s husband, Yanzhong. They have not seen each other for two years. They are so pleased to see each other again at a business party in Taibei, capital of Taiwan

Rachel: Shūlán, hào jiù bù jiàn. Nǐ zěnme yàng?
Rachel: Wǒ shì hěn lèi. Zuǐjìn wǒde gōngzuò hěn máng. Yánzhōng zěnme yàng?
Shūlán: Hái hào, xièxiè. Tā zuòtiān chūmén le.
Rachel: Qù nǎr le?
Shūlán: Méiguó. Xià ge xīngqī huīlái. Nǐde nán péngyou lái le ma?

Rachel: Lái le . . .
(at this very moment, Stuart, Rachel’s boy-friend, passes by)
Shūlán: Nǐ hào, Stuart. Wǒmen zhōngyú jiǎnmàn le.

Rachel: Shulan, I haven’t seen you for ages. How are you?
Shulan: I’m very well. Are you well? You look a little tired.
Rachel: I am tired. I’ve been very busy with work recently. How is Yanzhong?
Shulan: Fine, thanks. He went away yesterday.
Rachel: Where has he gone?
Shulan: America. He’s coming back next week. Has your boy-friend come with you?
Rachel: Yes . . .
(at this very moment, Stuart, Rachel’s boy-friend, passes by)
Rachel: Stuart, let me introduce you to my good friend, Shulan. Shulan, this is my boy-friend, Stuart.
Stuart: Hello, Shulan. Rachel is always talking about you.
Shulan: Hi, Stuart. We meet at last.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vocabulary</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hǎo</td>
<td>very</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiǔ</td>
<td>long (as of time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bù jiàn</td>
<td>not see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zěnme</td>
<td>how</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zěnme yàng?</td>
<td>How are you? How are things?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shì</td>
<td>[emphatic word]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuòjì</td>
<td>recently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngzuò</td>
<td>work/to work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>máng</td>
<td>to be busy/busy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hái hào</td>
<td>to be all right/to be fine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuótiān</td>
<td>yesterday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>he/she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūmén</td>
<td>to be away/to go away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qù</td>
<td>to go/to go to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǎr</td>
<td>where</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xià gè</td>
<td>next</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xīngqī</td>
<td>week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huílái</td>
<td>to return [lit. ‘return come’]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nán</td>
<td>male</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>péngríyou</td>
<td>friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rǎng</td>
<td>to let/to allow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiēshào</td>
<td>to introduce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐxià</td>
<td>[see Note 9]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cháng</td>
<td>often/always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuōqǐ</td>
<td>to mention/to talk [shuōqǐ in connected speech]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wǒmen</td>
<td>we/us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhōngyù</td>
<td>finally/at last</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiānmí</td>
<td>to meet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Zěnme yàng?

The greeting expression Nǐ zěnme yàng? (How are you? How are things?) is used very often among colleagues and friends, basically people who know each other. It is one of those phrases which are difficult to analyse grammatically. Let us concentrate on its usage. If the question is aimed at the person you are speaking to, nǐ (you) is usually omitted. If you enquire about someone or something, you must place that person or thing at the beginning of the question. For example:

Nǐ de nán péngríyou zěnme yàng? How is your boy-friend?  
Tiānqì zěnme yàng? How is the weather?

In response to the question Nǐ zěnme yàng?, you may use some of the following expressions:

| Hén hǎo. | Very well. |
| Báitái hǎo. | Not very well. |
| Hái hǎo. | Fine. |
| Báihuǒ. | Not well. |
| Hái bù cuò. | Not bad. |
| Mǎmǎ hūhū. | Terrible. |
| Jūnshì jù. | Just so-so. |

3 Emphatic shì

In order to emphasize certain phrases, the word shì (lit. ‘to be’) can be used before these phrases. Whenever shì is used for emphatic purposes in this book, it will be capitalized to distinguish it from ordinary shì (be). For example:

| Méixīn shì hěn máng. | Meixin is very busy. |
| Wǒ shì bù xiǎng hē kāfei. | I don’t want to have coffee. |

When emphatic shì is used in sentences with the verb kānshāngqu (to look/to seem), which we saw in Lesson 2, shì appears after the verb. For example:

Jiǎjiā kānshāngqu shì hěn niánqǐng.  
Jiājia does look very young.
Note that this rule does not apply to sentences where the word 使 (to be) is used in the first place. Thus you cannot say 我 是 我 Yingguorén (another emphatic word has to be used in this case, see Note 19 below).

4 Use of 搞

When the English sentence ‘She is busy with work’ is translated into Chinese, it becomes ‘Her work is busy’. For example:

Shulan de gōngzuò hěn méng.
Lit. Shulan’s work very be busy.

In such cases, the word de can be omitted. If you are asked to specify what you are busy with, you can put such information after 搞. For example:

A: Nǐ zuìjīn méng shénme?
Lit. You recently be busy what?
A: What have you been busy with recently?

B: Méng gōngzuò.
Lit. Busy work.
B: Busy with work.

5 Time-related phrase

In Chinese, time-related phrases (e.g. ‘next week’, ‘today’) are placed either at the beginning of a sentence or before the verb. For example:

Jonathan xià ge xīngqī lái Táiwān.
Lit. Jonathan next week come to Taiwan.
Jonathan is coming to Taiwan next week.

Xià ge xīngqī, Yánzhōng qù Yingguó.
Lit. Next week, Yanzhong go to Britain.
Yanzhong is going to Britain next week.

Note that when the time-related phrase such as xià ge xīngqī (next week) is used, the context itself makes it very clear that it is a future event we are talking about. This sentence order applies to questions as well (see Note 6 below).

6 Question word nǎr

In Note 5 of Lesson 2, we saw the question word nǎ (which). The same word also means ‘where’. When nǎ means ‘where’, it is spelt with an r at the end, i.e. nár, and hence pronounced with the tongue rolled up a little. As with shénme (what) and nǎlí whereabouts which we saw earlier, nár is also placed where the information required should appear in the reply. For example:

A: Nǐ xià ge xīngqī qù nár?
Lit. You next week go where?

A: Where are you going next week?

B: Wǒ xià ge xīngqī qù Fāguó.
Lit. I next week go France.
B: I’m going to France next week.

7 More on le

In Note 13 of Lesson 2, we saw one usage of the particle le (in Nǐ duō dà le?). Here, in Dialogue 1, le is added after some verbs to indicate that an event happened in the past (especially when a time-related phrase such as ‘yesterday’ is used). For example:

Rachel zuòtiān chūmén le. Rachel went away yesterday.
Tā qù nár le? Where did she go?
[she may be back already]

Depending on the context, especially when no time-related phrases are used, le can either indicate a past event or an event which has happened and is still happening:

Rachel chūmén le. Rachel has been away. [she is still away]
Tā qù nár le? Where has she gone? [she is still away]

If there are other words/phrases (i.e. objects) after the verb, and they are not very long, le can be placed either after the verb or after the object. For example:

Méixīn qù Táiwān le. or Méixīn qù le Táiwān.

Depending on the context, these two sentences can either mean ‘Méixīn went to Taiwan’ or ‘Méixīn has gone to Taiwan’. Note that le cannot be added to every verb.
8 Omission of the personal pronoun

The personal pronoun Tā (he) is omitted from the following two sentences in Dialogue 1: Qù nár le? and Xià ge xǐngqì huihài. The complete sentences should be Tā qù nár le? and Tā xià ge xǐngqì huihài. The omission of personal pronouns (e.g. 'I', 'you', 'he/she') is very common in the spoken language if they can be easily inferred from the context.

9 Use of yǐxià

The word yǐxià does not have any specific meaning in this context except that it softens the abruptness of Ràng wǒ jiěshào ... (Let me introduce ... ). Without the use of yǐxià, it sounds very bossy and tactless.

10 Difference between jiànmǐan and jiàndào

We saw earlier in Lesson 1 the verb jiàndào in Hěn gāoxìng jiàndào ni (Very pleased to meet you). Here, we have the sentence Wǒmen zhōngyǔ jiànmǐan le (We meet at last). The main difference between the two verbs lies in their usage:

X + jiàndào + Y
two or more than two people + jiànmǐan

For example:

Shùlán zuòtiān jiàndào le Stuart.
Shulan met Stuart yesterday.

Wǒmen xià ge xǐngqì jiànmǐan.
We are going to meet next week.

Exercises

Exercise 1

Solve the problems:

(a) You have not seen a Chinese friend of yours for a long time, and you have just bumped into him. What do you say?

Exercise 2

Use emphatic suī to rewrite the following sentences, and then translate them into English:

(a) John bù tài máng.
(b) Shùlán de gōngzuò hěn máng.
(c) Wáng Lín kǎnsīzhàngqu tǐng lǎo.

Exercise 3

Translate into Chinese:

(a) A: Where did you go yesterday?
   B: I went to London.
(b) A: Where are you going next week?
   B: China.
(c) A: Where has Yanzhong gone?
   B: He's gone to America.

Exercise 4

Place le in an appropriate place in the following sentences, and then translate them into English:

(a) Andrew qù Měiguó.
(b) Eléna hē kāfei.
(c) Zuòtiān Xīngháng shuōqí Tiānǐ.

Exercise 5

Fill in the blanks using jiàndào or jiànmǐan:

(a) Shùlán zhōngyǔ ______ le Stuart.
(b) Tāmen xià ge xǐngqì ________.
(c) Rachel hé (`and') Shùlán zuòtiān ______ le.
(d) Wǒ bù xiǎng ______ Zhāng Píng.
Dialogue 2
Tā jiēhūn le ma? Is he married? ●●

Later at the party, a colleague of Shulan’s, Lin Fang (female), chats with Shulan

LIN FANG: Shūlán, nà liàng ge rén shì shéi?
SHŪLÁN: Nán de jiào Stuart. Shi WP gōngsī de fū jǐnglǐ.
LIN FANG: Tā zhēn shuài. Nǐ zhīdào tā jiēhūn le ma?
SHŪLÁN: Měi yǒu jiēhūn. Būguò, tā yǒu nǚ péngyou le.
LIN FANG: Á! Zhēn kěxī.
SHŪLÁN: Wēishénme?
LIN FANG: Měi shénme. Nà ge nǚ de shì shéi shì?
SHŪLÁN: Tā jiù shì Stuart de nǚ péngyou. Tā jiào Rachel.

LIN FANG: Shulan, who are those two people?
SHULAN: The man is called Stuart. He is the deputy manager of WP company.
LIN FANG: He is really smart. Do you know if he is married?
SHULAN: No, he isn’t. But he’s got a girl-friend.
LIN FANG: What a shame!
SHULAN: Why?
LIN FANG: Nothing. Who is that woman?
SHULAN: She is Stuart’s girl-friend. She’s called Rachel.

Vocabulary

nà  that [see Note 12]
líàng  two
gè  [measure word, see Note 11]
shéi  who
gōngsī  company
fū  deputy/vice
jǐnglǐ  manager
shuài  to be smart
jiēhūn  to be married
méi yǒu  not
būguò  however/but
yǒu  to have
nǚ  female
ài  [exclamation word]
zhēn kěxī  what a shame/pity! [lit. ‘really pity’]

weishénme  why
méi shénme  nothing [lit. ‘not anything’]
nà ge nǚ de  that woman
jiū  [emphatic word]

Notes to Dialogue 2

11 Measure word

Discussing quantities of things in Chinese can be a little complicated in that a measure word must be used between a number and its noun. Measure words are also used between zhè/mà (this/that) and its noun. In Lesson 1, we actually came across one measure word běi in yī běi kāfēi (one cup of coffee). Different categories of nouns require different measure words. For instance, ge is used for human beings whereas tóu is used for pigs, cattle, etc. and tiáo is used for fish, rivers, etc. For example:

Wǒ rènshì sān gè Yinlügrén.

number measure word noun
I know three British people.

Tā yǒu èrshí tóu zhū.

number measure word noun
He has twenty pigs.

At this stage, if you cannot remember which measure word goes with which category of nouns, use gè instead. Please also note that the measure word gè, which carries the fourth tone in isolation, becomes toneless when used in a phrase or sentence. More measure words will be introduced as we progress in the book.

12 Use of pronoun nà

When nà or zhè is followed by the verb shì (to be), they mean ‘that’ or ‘this’ respectively and function as subjects. For example:

Nà/Zhè shì wǒde kāfēi. That/This is my coffee.

verb

When nà or zhè precedes nouns, or numbers plus nouns, measure words such as gè must be used. Whenever the number is yī (one), it is almost always omitted. So nà yī ge rén becomes nà ge rén (that person). When nà (sometimes pronounced nèi) is followed
by numbers other than one plus measure words, it means ‘those’. This rule also applies to the pronoun 
zhè (which can be pronounced zhēi here). For example:

nà/zhè ge Méiguórén that/this American
nà sān bèi kāfēi those three cups of coffee
zhē sān bèi kāfēi these three cups of coffee

Remember that nà (that) has the fourth tone whereas nā (which) has the third tone.

13 Use of liàng

When you count, the number to use for two is èr. However, if you want to say ‘two somethings’, you should almost always use liàng instead. For example:

liàng bèi kāfēi two cups of coffee
liàng ge Bēijingrén two Beijing people

14 Changing adjectives to nouns by adding de

Adjectives such as nán (male) and nǚ (female) can be changed into nouns by adding de after them. Thus we have:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nán</td>
<td>nán de man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǚ</td>
<td>nǚ de woman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lāo</td>
<td>lāo de the old one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎo</td>
<td>xiǎo de the young/small/little one</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that we can also add the word rén (person/people) after nán and nǚ to form nouns nán rén (lit. ‘male person’) for ‘man’ and nǚ rén (lit. ‘female person’) for ‘woman’, which are more formal than nán de and nǚ de. On public signs, nán means ‘men’s toilet’, and nǚ means ‘women’s toilet’. See the character section at the end of this lesson.

15 Linking two nouns with de

Another use of de is to link two nouns, the first being subordinate to the second. It is equivalent to the English word ‘of’ or apostrophe plus ‘s’. For example:

gōngsī de jīnglǐ company’s manager/the manager of the company
Rachel de nán péngyou Rachel’s boy-friend

16 Question word shéi

The question word shéi (‘who’) can appear at the beginning or at the end of the question depending on how you want your question to be structured. For example:

Shéi shì WP gōngsī de jīnglǐ? Lit. Who be WP company’s manager?

WP gōngsī de jīnglǐ shì shéi? Lit. WP company’s manager be who?

17 Negation word méi yǒu

So far, we have been using bù to negate adverbs, verb–adjectives, and verbs for present and future events. Another important negation word is méi yǒu (yǒu is often omitted). It is mainly used to:
(a) indicate that an action has not taken place; (b) indicate that an action did not happen; and (c) negate the verb yǒu (to have). You must never use méi to negate an adverb or a verb–adjective. It is only verbs (i.e. ‘doing words’) which can be negated by méi or méi yǒu. Simply add méi or méi yǒu before the verb. With the verb yǒu (to have), just add méi in front of it. For example:

Zuótiān wǒ méi yǒu qù Lúndūn. I didn’t go to London yesterday.
Stuart méi yǒu lái. Stuart hasn’t arrived.
Wú Hái méi yǒu nán péngyou. Wu Hai hasn’t got a boy-friend.

Remember: whenever méi or méi yǒu is used, le is usually not used. Le can only be used together with méi yǒu when you want to indicate that you had something before but now it is running out. For example:

Wǒ méi yǒu kāfēi le. I’ve run out of coffee.
Kāfēi méi yǒu le. Coffee is running out.

Another thing to notice is that there are no equivalent Chinese words to the English words ‘a’ and ‘the’.
18 Pronoun shénme

Earlier in Lesson 2, we saw shénme (what) used as a question word. Shénme can also be used as a pronoun meaning ‘anything’ and it is usually used with the negation word méi to form negative sentences. For example:

Wǒ méi shuō shénme.
I didn’t say anything./I said nothing.

Tā méi hé shénme.
He didn’t drink anything./He drank nothing.

19 Emphatic word jiù

In Note 3 of Dialogue 1 above, we mentioned that sentences with the verb shì (to be) cannot be emphasized by the emphatic word shì. The correct word to use in such cases is jiù. Simply add jiù in front of shì. For example:

Wǒ jiù shì Kàn Qiān.
I am Kan Qian. [often used on the telephone]

Tā jiù shì gōngsī de jīnglì.
She is the manager of the company.

Exercises

Exercise 6

Referring to the two dialogues in this lesson, answer the following questions in Chinese:

(a) Shūlán rènshì Rachel ma?
(b) Rachel rènshì Lín Fāng ma?
(c) Rachel jiēhūn le ma?
(d) Shēi shì Stuart?

Exercise 7

Translate into Chinese using appropriate measure words:

(a) fifteen American people   (b) two Chinese people
(c) three men               (d) eight cups of coffee
(e) four good friends

Exercise 8

Complete the other half of the conversation:

(a) A: Nǐ yǒu kǎfēi ma?
    B: ________ (Yes, I have.)
(b) A: Kevin yǒu nǚ péngyou ma?
    B: ________ (No, he hasn’t.)
(c) A: Wǒ bù huì shuō Yīnwén.
    B: ________ (What a shame!)

Exercise 9

Turn the following sentences into questions regarding the underlined parts, which is the information you wish to obtain:

Example: Tā jiào Tāng Shūlán. → Tā jiào shénme?

(a) Yànzhōng qù Méiguó le.
(b) Stuart shì WP gōngsī de fù jīnglǐ.
(c) Shūlán shì Zhōngguórén.
(d) Wǒ xià ge xīngqī qù Táiwān.

Exercise 10

Use méi (you) or bù to negate the following sentences, then translate them into English:

(a) Wǒ xià ge xīngqī qù Zhōngguó.
(b) Jane jiēhūn le.
(c) Xiǎo Fāng yǒu Yídāi kǎfēi.
(d) Wáng Píng rènshì Méixīn.
(e) Zuòtān wǒmen qù le Lúndūn.
(f) Wǒ xiǎng hē kǎfēi.

Exercise 11

Fill in the blanks using emphatic words jiù or shì:

(a) Stuart ________ shì Rachel de nán péngyou.
(b) Tā ________ méi qù Zhōngguó.
(c) Méixīn kǎnshānqū ________ hén niáncìng.
(d) Nǐ ________ shì Lín Fāng ma?
Characters

1 Learning to write:
(a) Pronouns tā (he) and tā (she)

First of all, there is a difference between the characters for ‘he’ (tā) and ‘she’ (tā). The difference is in the left part, whilst they share the same right part:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tā he</th>
<th>她 (women)</th>
<th>他 (men)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 2 3 4 5</td>
<td>她 (women)</td>
<td>他 (men)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As you can see, the male tā has the ‘person radical’ 亻 and the female tā has the ‘woman radical’ 女.

(b) Verbs qu (to go) and lái (to come/arrive)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>qu</th>
<th>去</th>
<th>去</th>
<th>去</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 2 3 4 5</td>
<td>去</td>
<td>去</td>
<td>去</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>lái</th>
<th>来</th>
<th>来</th>
<th>来</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 2 3 4 5</td>
<td>来</td>
<td>来</td>
<td>来</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(c) Yes/No question word má and short answers 
Shì de (Yes) and Bú shì (No)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>má</th>
<th>吗</th>
<th>吗</th>
<th>吗</th>
<th>吗</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 2 3 4 5 6</td>
<td>吗</td>
<td>吗</td>
<td>吗</td>
<td>吗</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The left part of má is called the ‘mouth radical’ 口 which is pronounced kǒu when used on its own. Kǒu is a formal term for ‘mouth’.

2 Recognizing two important signs

Below are two important signs to remember: one is nán for ‘men’, and the other is nǚ for ‘women’. We actually learnt how to write nǚ when we were learning the character hào in Lesson 1. These two signs are useful to know if you need to use a public toilet:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>nán</th>
<th>nǚ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 2 3 4</td>
<td>nán</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Recognizing numbers:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>yī</th>
<th>èr</th>
<th>sān</th>
<th>sì</th>
<th>wǔ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>一</td>
<td>二</td>
<td>三</td>
<td>四</td>
<td>五</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The character shì was introduced in Lesson 6. The left part of dé is called the ‘white radical’ 白. When used on its own, 白 is pronounced bái meaning ‘white’.
Exercise 12

Convert the following pinyin into characters:
(a) nǚ rén (woman/women)
(b) Zhōngguórén (Chinese person/people)
(c) nǐ hǎo (hello)
(d) wǒ shuō Zhōngwén (I speak Chinese)

Reading/listening comprehension  

Read the following passage carefully, and then write ‘true’ or ‘false’ next to the sentences below. If you have the recording, listen to the passage first (try not to look at the script) and then write ‘true’ or ‘false’ next to the sentences below:


Vocabulary

zhàngfu  husband (same as the word for ‘Mr’)
hé  and

Questions

A Zhū Mín shì Zhōngguórén.  
B Zhū Mín yǒu sān ge Yīngguó péngyou.  
C Zhū Mín de Yīngguó péngyou jiào Mary.  
D Heather kǎoshàngqu bù lǎo.  
E Heather méi jiēhūn.  
F Joe shì Heather de zhàngfu.  
G Heather hé Joe zuòtiān qù le Zhōngguó.

Dialogue 1

Jǐ diǎn le?  几点了?  What's the time?  

David, an Australian, and his Malaysian wife, Siti, are visiting Shanghai as tourists and staying in a hotel. They arrived very late last night, and forgot to adjust their watches to the local time. It is now morning. They ask a hotel employee the time and the time at which breakfast is served.

DAVID: Záoshāng hǎo.  
HOTEL EMPLOYEE: Záoshāng hǎo.  
DAVID: Qīng wèn, xiānzhài jǐ diǎn le?  
HOTEL EMPLOYEE: Bā diǎn shí fèn.  
DAVID: Xièxiè.  
HOTEL EMPLOYEE: Bù xiè.
Notes to Dialogue 1

1 Polite way of asking for information Qìng wèn . . .

Early in Lesson 1 (Note 7), we had the word qìng (please) used to invite someone politely to do something. The same word is used in Qìng wèn, which literally means ‘please ask . . .’. This is a polite phrase which is used when asking for information or help. It can be broadly translated as ‘May I ask . . . ?’ or ‘Could you tell me . . . please?’ For example:

Qìng wèn, nǐ jiào shénme?  
May I ask what your name is?

Qìng wèn, nǐ shì Sìfāng ma?  
Could you tell me please if you are Sìfāng?

2 Telling the time

To tell the time, the key words are diàn (o’clock), fèn (minute), bàn (half), kè (quarter) and chá (lacking/minus). The hour comes first, then the minute. For example:

A 7:10 qī diàn shí fèn  
B 8:05 bā diàn wù fèn or bā diàn líng wǔ  
C 9:15 jiǔ diàn yì kè or jiǔ diàn shí wù fèn
4 Use of yìjīng . . . le

If you use yìjīng (already) before some verbs or verb–adjectives, you must use le in the same phrase/sentence. Put le at the very end of the phrase/sentence. However, the word le can be used without yìjīng to indicate that an event has already happened. For example:

Tā yìjīng wǔshí sì le.
He is fifty already.

Jiān yìjīng qù Zhōngguó le.
Jiān has already gone to China.

Jiān qù Zhōngguó le.
Jiān went to China./Jiān has gone to China.

5 Difference between fēn and fēnzhōng

The word fēn is only used when telling the time, whereas fēnzhōng is used as a unit of time when referring to the length of time. For example:

Xiànzài shí liǎng diān shí fēn.
It’s ten past two.

Wǒ yǒu sānshí fēnzhōng chí wǔfǎn.
I have got thirty minutes to eat lunch.

6 Use of kǎimén

The verb kǎimén (lit. ‘open door’), meaning ‘to be open’ or ‘to open’, is used to refer to the opening time of various shops and organizations. You cannot use this verb to say ‘open the coffee jar’, for example. That is to say, the verb kǎimén cannot take an object. For example:

Cānǐng qì diān kǎimén.
The restaurant opens at seven.

Xīa ge xīngqī cānǐng bù kǎimén.
Next week, the restaurant is not open.

Note that (a) the phrase indicating the time always occurs before the verb; and (b) no extra word like at in English is needed before the time.
7 Position of kuài

When kuài (quickly/soon) is used as an adverb, it is placed before verbs in those sentences that ask for help, or that give orders. For example:

A child begs his/her mother:

Ni kuài huīlái ba.
Lit. You soon return please.
Please come back soon.

A mother says to a child:

Kuài yīdiǎn chī.
Lit. Quickly a little eat.
Eat a bit quickly.

Exercises

Exercise 1

Use the clock faces to tell the time:

(a)  
(b)  
(c)  
(d)  
(e)  
(f)  

Exercise 2

Match the times to the clocks:

(a)  
(b)  
(c)  
(d)  
(e)  
(f)  

1 bā diǎn líng wǔ
2 shí yī diǎn èrshí fēn
3 shí'èr diǎn bān
4 jiǔ diǎn yī kè
5 liǎng diǎn sìshíwǔ
6 sì diǎn chà wǔ fēn

Exercise 3

Solve the problem:

(a) You see a Chinese person early in the morning. What do you say to greet him/her?
(b) You want to find out what time it is. What do you say?
(c) You want to ask a Chinese person’s name in a polite way. How do you phrase your question?
(d) How many ways can you think of to respond to Xièxiè (Thank you)?

Exercise 4

Fill in the blanks and then translate the sentences into English:
(a) Zǎofān shì ________ (from) qī diǎn ________ (to) bā diǎn bàn.
(b) Wǒmen yǒu wǔ ________ (minutes) hé kāfēi.
(c) ________ (Now) shì liù diǎn bàn.
(d) Tā ________ (already) jiēhūn le.

Exercise 5

Translate into Chinese:
(a) What time does the restaurant open?
(b) Do you know what time the restaurant opens?
(c) Alan is already thirty years old.
(d) Please come to Britain soon.

Dialogue 2

Qù yóuyǒng 去游泳  Going swimming  🌊

David and Siti want to find out if there is a swimming pool in the hotel. They first ask a Chinese woman who happens to be sitting next to them in the café.

David:  Nǐ zhīdào zhè ge fāndiàn yǒu yóuyǒng chí ma?
Chinese:  Duìbuqì. Wǒ bù zhīdào.
David:  Méi guānxi.
(they ask a hotel employee later on)
Siti:  Duìbuqì. Nǐmén de fāndiàn yǒu yóuyǒng chí ma?
Hotel employee:  Yǒu liǎng ge. Yì ge dà de. Yì ge xiǎo de.
Siti:  Tāi hǎo le. Nǐ kěyǐ qiáo sōu wǒ kāi mén shíjiān ma?
Hotel employee:  Dāngrán kěyǐ. Dà de cōng zǎoshang qì diān kāi dào xiàwǔ yī diǎn. Xiǎo de cōng xiàwǔ sān diǎn kāi dào wǎnshāng jǔ diǎn.

Siti:  Xièxiè. David, nǐ xiǎng yóuyǒng ma?
David:  Xiǎng. Bùguò, wǒ yǒu yīdiǎn è. Zánmen xiān chī wǔ fān, hǎo bù hǎo?
Siti:  Hǎo ba. Jí diǎn chī?
David:  Yì diǎn, zěnmé yàng?
Siti:  Hǎo de. Nàme, zánmen sì diǎn qù yóuyǒng, xǐng ma?
David:  Xǐng.

David:  你知道这个饭店有游泳池吗？
Chinese:  对不起，我不知道。
David:  没关系。
Siti:  对不起，你们的饭店有游泳池吗？
Hotel employee:  有两个，一个大，一个小。
Siti:  太好了，你可以告诉我开门时间吗？
Hotel employee:  当然可以。大的从早上七点开到下午一点。小的从下午三点开到晚上九点。
Siti:  谢谢。DAVID,你想游泳吗？
David:  想。不过，我有一点饿。咱们先吃午饭，好不好？
Siti:  好吧。几点吃？
David:  一点，怎么样？
Siti:  好的。那么，咱们四点去游泳，行吗？
David:  行。

David:  Do you know if there is a swimming pool in this hotel?
Chinese:  I'm sorry. I don't know.
David:  It doesn't matter.
(they ask a hotel employee later on)
Siti:  Excuse me. Are there any swimming pools in this hotel?
Hotel employee:  Yes, there are two. A large one and a small one.
Siti:  Great. Can you tell me the opening hours?
Hotel employee:  Of course I can. The big one is open from seven in the morning to one in the afternoon, and the small one is open from three in the afternoon to nine in the evening.
Siti:  Thank you. David, do you want to swim?
David:  Yes, I do. But I'm a little hungry. Shall we have lunch first?
Siti:  Fine. What time?
DAVID: How about one o'clock?

SITI: That's fine. In that case, shall we go swimming at four o'clock?

DAVID: OK.

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fàndiàn</td>
<td>饭店</td>
<td>hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yóuyǒng chí</td>
<td>游泳池</td>
<td>swimming pool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duībùqǐ</td>
<td>对不起</td>
<td>I'm sorry/Excuse me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>méi guānxì</td>
<td>没关系</td>
<td>It doesn't matter/It's all right/It's OK [lit. 'not matter']</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nínméndé</td>
<td>你们的</td>
<td>your/yours [plural]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dà de</td>
<td>大的</td>
<td>the large one/the big one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎo de</td>
<td>小的</td>
<td>the small one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kěyǐ</td>
<td>可以</td>
<td>may/could/can</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gàoosù</td>
<td>告诉</td>
<td>to tell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shíjiān</td>
<td>时间</td>
<td>time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāngrán</td>
<td>当然</td>
<td>of course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kāi</td>
<td>开</td>
<td>to be open/to open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiàwǔ</td>
<td>下午</td>
<td>afternoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wǎnshāng</td>
<td>晚上</td>
<td>evening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yóuyǒng</td>
<td>游泳</td>
<td>to swim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>è</td>
<td>饿</td>
<td>to be hungry/hungry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zánmen</td>
<td>咱们</td>
<td>we/us [colloquial term]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiān</td>
<td>先</td>
<td>first of all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chī</td>
<td>吃</td>
<td>to eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wǔfàn</td>
<td>午饭</td>
<td>lunch [lit. 'noon meal']</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nàme</td>
<td>那么</td>
<td>in that case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hǎo bù háo?</td>
<td>好不好?</td>
<td>Is it all right?/Is it OK?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hǎo ba</td>
<td>好吧</td>
<td>all right/fine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xíng ma?</td>
<td>行吗?</td>
<td>Is it OK?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xíng</td>
<td>行</td>
<td>to be OK/can do/will do</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes to Dialogue 2

8 Use of yǒu

Yǒu means 'to have'. In English, you say There is a library at the university; but in Chinese, this sentence becomes 'The university has a library' because there is no 'there-is/are' construction in the Chinese language. For example:

Zhè ge fàndiàn yǒu sān ge cāntīng.
Lit. This hotel have three restaurants. There are three restaurants in this hotel.

Wǒmén de gōngsī yǒu liù ge Zhōngguó rén.
Lit. Our company have six Chinese people. There are six Chinese people in our company.

9 Use of duībùqǐ

When the phrase duībùqǐ is used to apologize, it means 'I'm sorry'; and when it is used to attract someone's (usually a stranger's) attention, it means 'Excuse me'. If someone says duībùqǐ as an apology, one of the appropriate things to say in response is Méi guānxì (It doesn't matter). For example:

A: Duībùqǐ. Wǒ méi yǒu kāfēi.
   I'm sorry. I haven't got coffee.
B: Méi guānxì. Chá yé xǐng.
   It doesn't matter. Tea will do.

A: Duībùqǐ. Qíng wèn, jì diǎn le?
   Excuse me. What's the time, please?
B: Sān diǎn shì fēn.
   Ten past three.

10 Use of kěyǐ

Another way of making your request more polite when asking for information, or permission to do something, from other people is to use kěyǐ (could/can/may) before the verb. For example:

Nǐ kěyǐ gàoosù wǒ jǐ jiào shénme ma?
Could you tell me what your name is?

Wǒ kěyǐ qù Zhōngguó ma?
May I go to China?

11 Verbs used as adjectives

Some verbs (mostly verbs consisting of two syllables), without changing their forms, can be used in front of nouns as adjectives to modify nouns. For example:
12 Use of fàn

The word fàn means ‘food’ or ‘meal’. One of the common greetings among neighbours is Niè chǐ fàn le ma? (Have you eaten?). If you have had your meal, you say Chǐ le (lit. ‘Eat already’); and if you have not had your meal, you say Mèi chǐ (lit. ‘Not eat’). The word fàn is used to form the following expressions we have come across so far:

zhōufàn (breakfast) comes from zhāoshāng (morning) and fàn wànfàn (supper/dinner) comes from wānshāng (evening) and fàn zhōngfàn or wūfàn (lunch) comes from zhōngyuè (noon) and fàn

13 Yes/no question Hào bù hào?

The question Hào bù hào? (lit. ‘Good not good?’), is identical in meaning to Hào ma? (Is it all right?). All questions ending with ma? can be rephrased according to the pattern below:

(Subject) + verb or verb–adjective + bù + repetition of the previous verb

For example:

Ní shí Zhōngguóér? becomes Ní shí bù shí Zhōngguóér? Are you Chinese?

(Ní) è ma? becomes (Ní) è bù è? Hungry?

The reply for the first question above is still Shí de for ‘Yes’ and Bù shí for ‘No’. The reply for the second question is È for ‘Yes’ and Bù è for ‘No’. Note that (a) the subject can sometimes be omitted; and (b) the verb or verb–adjective after bù must be the same as the one before bù. If there are two verbs in one question such as

Ní xiāng hē kāfēi ma? Would you like to have a coffee?

verb₁ + verb² + object'. The above question thus becomes:

Ni xiāng bù xiāng hē kāfēi?

verb¹ verb² verb³

If the verb requires méi as its negation word, méi is used instead of bù. For example:

Ní yǒu kāfēi ma? becomes Ní yǒu méi yǒu kāfēi? Do you have some coffee?

14 Affirmative sentences + . . . xīng ma?, . . . hào ma? or . . . zènme yáng?

One way of making a suggestion and then seeking agreement or asking for permission is to add one of the following phrases – xīng ma?/xīng bù xīng?, hào ma?/hào bù hào? (Is it OK/Is it fine?) and Zènme yáng? (How about . . . ?) – to affirmative sentences. Most of the time, the above phrases are interchangeable. Just remember that . . . xīng ma/xīng bù xīng can be used for asking for permission as well as making a suggestion whereas . . . hào ma?/hào bù hào? and . . . zènme yáng? are only used for making a suggestion.

For example:

Wǒ wānshāng liù diǎn bàn lǐ, xīng ma?
I’m coming at half past six in the evening. Is that OK?

Wǒmen shì’ér diǎn chì wūfàn, hào ma?
Let’s have lunch at twelve, shall we?

Bù diǎn, zènme yáng?
How about eight o’clock?

15 Omission of the second syllable in a two-syllable verb

Verbs such as yǒuyòng (to swim), kāimén (to be open) are two-syllable verbs. The second syllable, i.e. yòng in yǒuyòng, mén in kāimén, is often omitted (a) in a reply to the question where the verb in its full form has already been mentioned; and (b) when the phrase cóng . . . dào . . . (from . . . to . . .) is used. For example:

A: Ní yǒuyòng le ma?
Did you swim?

B: Yǒu le. Wǒ cóng liǎng diǎn yǒu dào sì diǎn.
Yes, I did. I swam from two o’clock to four o’clock.
A: Cánting kāimén ma?
Is the dining-room open?

B: Kāi. Cōng liù diān kāi dào jiǔ diān bàn.
Yes. It opens from six to half past nine.

Note that the one-syllable verb always occurs before dào in the phrase cōng... dào (from... to...), with the exception of shì (to be) which is placed before cōng. For example:

Wān fān shì cōng liù diān dào shì diān.
Dinner is from six to ten.

Yóuyǒng chī cóng liǎng diān kāi dào wǔ diān bàn.
The swimming pool opens from two to half past five.

16 Tone of nǐménde

The word mén carries the second tone in isolation. When it is added to nǐ to form nǐmén (‘you’ plural), mén becomes toneless. When the toneless de is added to nimen to form nǐménde (‘your’/yours’ plural), the second tone comes back to mén. Thus we have nǐménde. This rule of tone change applies to wǒménde (our/ours), tāménde (their/theirs), etc.

Exercises

Exercise 6

Solve the problems:

(a) You want to ask the receptionist in your hotel some questions but the receptionist does not know that you are present. To attract his/her attention, what do you say?
(b) What do you say if you want to find out what time the swimming pool opens?
(c) You are late for your appointment. What do you say if you want to apologize?

Exercise 7

Use complete sentences to state the times at which you usually do the following:

(a) chī zāofàn    (b) chī wūfān
(c) chī wǎnfān   (d) yóuyǒng

Exercise 8

Translate the following into Chinese using yǒu (to have):

(a) There are twenty large hotels in Beijing.
(b) There are two restaurants in our hotel.
(c) Are there any Chinese people in this company?
(d) There isn’t a swimming pool in the Beijing Hotel.

Exercise 9

Rewrite the following questions without changing their meanings, and then translate them into English:

Example: Nǐ lèi ma? → Nǐ lèi bù lèi?

(a) Tā shì Yīngguórén ma?
(b) Nǐ zuòjīn mǎng ma?
(c) Zhāng Bīn yǒu nǚ péngyou ma?
(d) Nǐ xiǎng qù Zhōngguó ma?

Exercise 10

The following are replies to questions or comments. Make up an appropriate question or comment which could precede the reply:

(a) Měi guānxi.
(b) Xiànzài qǐ diàn èrshiwǔ.
(c) Cánting liù diān kāimén.
(d) Huījiān.

Exercise 11

You want to ask your Chinese friend if it is OK:

(a) to have lunch at 12:30
(b) to go swimming at 4:00pm
(c) to call her ‘Xiao Li’
Characters

1 Learning to write:
(a) Xiăng (to want)

Xiăng is a rather difficult character. The two major parts are the top and bottom parts. Let us look at the top part, which consists of the left part and the right part. The top left part 木 is called the ‘wood radical’ and is pronounced mù, meaning ‘wood’. The top right part 目, which is also pronounced mù, is a formal term for ‘eye’. The bottom part 心 is pronounced xīn, meaning ‘heart’.

Many characters in the Chinese language that involve the working of one’s mind have the ‘heart radical’ in them. Perhaps in the old days, it was thought that the heart was used for thinking.

By learning xiăng, we have in effect learnt three other characters. They are:

木 mù wood
日 mù eye
心 xīn heart

(b) Men [plural particle]

The suffix men is added to wǒ, nǐ and tā to form plurals wōmen (we), nǐmen (you) and tāmen (they):

men

The left part of men 门 is the ‘person radical’ and the right part 门 is pronounced mén as well, and it means ‘door’ on its own.

2 Recognizing important signs

Below are two important signs to remember: one is fándiàn (hotel) and the other is cānťīng (restaurant/dining-room):

饭店
fan diàn

餐厅
cān tīng

The character for fan 饭 in fándiàn means ‘food’ or ‘meal’. The left part 非 is called the ‘food radical’. The character for diàn 店 means ‘shop’ or ‘store’. Perhaps in previous times, the place you went for food also provided accommodation. However, although the term fándiàn these days refers to hotels most of the time, you can sometimes find some restaurants which are called fándiàn.

Since you now recognize the characters for fándiàn, you may recognize the following sign. Give it a try!

北京饭店

It is ‘the Beijing Hotel’.
Exercise 12

Put the following characters in the right order to form a meaningful sentence, and then translate the sentence into English:

说中想你文吗

Reading/listening comprehension

1 Read the following dialogue carefully and then answer the multiple-choice questions by ticking the most appropriate phrase. If you have the recording, listen to the dialogue first (try not to look at the script) and then answer the multiple-choice questions by ticking the most appropriate phrase:

Chen Guangmeng and Xu Xunfeng share the same office at work. They are planning to do something together.

Chen Guangmeng: Nǐ jìntiān máng ma?
Xu Xunfeng: Bù tài máng. Wèishénme?
Chen Guangmeng: Zánmen qu yóuyǒng, hǎo ma?
Xu Xunfeng: Hǎo zhùyì. Búguǒ, wǒ xiànzáí hěn è.
Chen Guangmeng: Nàme, zánmen xiān qù chī wūfàn. Cánting jǐ diǎn kǎimén?
Xu Xunfeng: Shì'èr diǎn bān.
Chen Guangmeng: Hái yǒu shìwù fènzhōng kǎimén.
Xu Xunfeng: Shì'èr diǎn shìshí qù chī wūfàn, xíng ma?
Chen Guangmeng: Xíng. Sān diǎn qu yóuyǒng, zěnme yàng?
Xu Xunfeng: Hǎo de.

Vocabulary

jìntiān  today
hǎo zhùyì  good idea

Questions

A Xú Xùnfēng jǐntiān máng ma?
   (a) hén máng  (b) bù hén máng  (c) bù máng

B Chén Guāngmēng xiāng gàn (‘do’) shénme?
   (a) yóuyǒng  (b) chī wūfàn  (c) hē kāfēi

C Xú Xùnfēng xiāng xiān gàn (‘do’) shénme?
   (a) hē kāfēi  (b) yóuyǒng  (c) chī wūfàn

D Cánting jǐ diǎn kǎimén?
   (a) shìyī diǎn bān  (b) shì'èr diǎn sānshí  (c) shì'èr diǎn

E Xiànzáí jǐ diǎn le? (at the time when they talk)
   (a) shì'èr diǎn yī kě  (b) shìyī diǎn ěrshíwǔ  (c) shì'èr diǎn ěrshí

F Tāmén jǐ diǎn qù yóuyǒng?
   (a) liáng diǎn bān  (b) sān diǎn  (c) sān diǎn shí fēn

2 Read aloud the following phrases or words and add on the correct tone marks. If you have the recording, listen first, and then add on the correct tone marks:

(a) huījiān  see you later
(b) cánting  dining-room
(c) duībùqǐ  I'm sorry/Excuse me
(d) dà de  the large one
5 Jīārén hé pénghyōu  
Family and friends

By the end of this lesson, you should be able to:
- describe your family and ask about someone else's family
- ask and respond to questions regarding one's occupation
- use present continuous tense
- ask after someone
- recognize and write more characters

Dialogue 1
Gàosū wǒ nǐde qīngkuāng  
Tell me about yourself

Lin Shaotang left China for America when he was only sixteen. Now, he is in his late sixties, and is currently in Sichuan province visiting his younger sister Lin Yingmei for the first time since he left China. Yingmei has told him a lot about herself and her family, and now she wants to find out about her brother.

YINGMEI: Gēge, lúndào nǐ gàosū wǒ nǐde qīngkuāng le.
SHAOTANG: Hào ba. (He goes to fetch some photos from his bag) Zhè shì wǒ tàitái, Yìlǐshābái. Tā shì Měiguórén.
YINGMEI: Tā hén piāoliang. Tā hái gōngzuò ma?
SHAOTANG: Bù gōngzuò le. Wǒmen dōu tuixiū le.
YINGMEI: (pointing at two people in one photo) Zhè liǎng ge shì bù shì nǐméde hāizi?

YINGMEI: Zhígāng zài shàng zhōngxué ma?
SHAOTANG: Bù shì. Tā yǐjīng shì dà xuéshēng le.
YINGMEI: Zhēn de? Tā xué shénme zhūányè?
SHAOTANG: Guānli.
SHAOTANG: Hǎo de. Méilín yǐjīng dǎng māma le. Zhè shì tā zhāngfù, Línfú...

YINGMEI: 哥哥，轮到你告诉我你的情况了。
SHAOTANG: 好吧。(...) 这是我太太，伊丽莎白。她是美国人。
YINGMEI: 她很漂亮。她还工作吗？
SHAOTANG: 不工作了。我们都退休了。
YINGMEI: (…) 这两个是不是你们的孩子？
SHAOTANG: 是的。他们有中文名字。这是我们的儿子，志钢。
YINGMEI: 这是我们的女儿，梅琳。
SHAOTANG: 志钢在上中学吗？
YINGMEI: 不是。他已经上大学生了。
SHAOTANG: 真的？他学什么专业？
YINGMEI: 管理。
SHAOTANG: 很有意思。给我讲讲梅琳。
YINGMEI: 好的，梅琳已经当妈妈了。这是她丈夫，林福...
SHAOTANG: OK. (He goes to fetch some photos from his bag) This is my wife, Elizabeth. She is American.
YINGMEI: She is very beautiful. Is she still working?
Notes to Dialogue 1

1 Kinship terms

Kinship terms in the Chinese language are more complicated than in English. In addition to those terms in the dialogue, below are some other frequently used kinship terms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bàbā</td>
<td>dad/father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiējiē</td>
<td>elder sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīdī</td>
<td>younger brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mèimei</td>
<td>younger sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǎimāi</td>
<td>grandmother (on father's side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yéyé</td>
<td>grandfather (on father's side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shūshū</td>
<td>uncle (on father's side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gūgū</td>
<td>aunt (on father's side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wàipó/lǎolao</td>
<td>grandmother (on mother's side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wàigōng/lǎoyé</td>
<td>grandfather (on mother's side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiǔjiǔ</td>
<td>uncle (on mother's side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ā'íyí</td>
<td>aunt (on mother's side)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the repeated words do not carry any tones. The above terms can be used both to refer to someone and to address someone. For example:

Wòde māma shì zhōngxué láoshi.

term of reference

My mother is a secondary-school teacher.

Xièxié ni, jiējiē.

term of address

Thank you, elder sister.

If you have more than one elder brother, say three, they are called and referred to as:

| dà gē (lit. ‘big brother’) | the eldest brother |
| èr gē                     | the second elder brother |
| sān gē                    | the third elder brother |

The third elder brother, if you have only three, can also be called and referred to as xiǎo gē (little elder brother). The same principle applies to other kinship terms such as jiējiē (elder sister). However,
one usually calls one's younger sister(s) or brother(s) by their first names instead of mèimei or didi.

2 Foreign names

Most foreign names, including personal names and place names, are translated according to their sounds. Some foreign names have standard translations. For example, 'David' is Dàwěi, 'Mary' is Mǎlì, 'London' is Lǔndāo, etc.

3 Omission of de from wǒde, nǐde and tāde

The word de is most likely to be omitted from wǒde (my), nǐde (your), tāde (his/her), etc. if the noun that follows it is a kinship term. However, if one-syllable adjectives such as hǎo, lǎo are used before the noun, de cannot be omitted. For example:

Wǒ tāitài bù huí shuō Yingwén.
My wife can't speak English.

Wǒde hǎo didi hěn cōngming.
My good younger brother is very clever.

4 Titles used to refer to one's spouse

In mainland China, the term àiren (lit. 'love person') is used both in spoken and written Chinese to refer to both 'husband' and 'wife'. The formal term for 'husband' is zhàngfu and 'wife' is qīzi. The terms tāitài and xiānshēng can mean 'Mrs' and 'Mr' in one context and 'wife' and 'husband' in another context (xiānshēng can also be used to refer to one's teacher). In Hong Kong, Taiwan and other international Chinese communities, the terms tāitài and xiānshēng are widely used to mean 'wife' and 'husband'. Since most married Chinese women keep their maiden names, it is thus inappropriate to use tāitài (Mrs) to address a married woman (see Note 2 of Lesson 1 for other titles).

5 Use of lǔndāo

The construction Lǔndāo + pronoun + verb + le can be broadly translated as 'It is somebody's turn to do something'. Note that le is used in this construction to indicate that it is already somebody's turn to do something. For example:

Lǔndāo wǒ zuòfàn le. It's my turn to cook.
Lǔndāo tā yóu yǒng le. It's her turn to swim.

6 Construction shì bù shì

An alternative to the ... shì ... ma? question is ... shì bù shì ...? (see Note 13 of Lesson 4). For example:

Nǐ shì Wáng Lín ma? becomes Nǐ shì bù shì Wáng Lín? (Are you Wang Lin?)

7 Use of qīngkuàng

Words like qīngkuàng (situation/present condition), which are very vague in meaning, are often used in Chinese to express the English equivalents of 'yourself', 'about', 'things', etc. For example:

Qīng gǎosu wǒ nǐ tāitài de qīngkuàng.
Please tell me about your wife.

Qīngkuàng bù hǎo.
Things are not good.

8 Continuous tense particle zài

In Chinese, the continuous tense, i.e. 'somebody is/was doing something', is indicated by the grammar word zài (or zhèngzài) which is placed before the verb. Depending on the context, sentences with zài or zhèngzài can refer either to something which is happening at present (habitual activity) or to something which is happening at the very moment when the sentence is uttered. For example:

Nǐ bāba hái zài gōngzuò ma? Is your father still working?  
Wǒ zhèngzài chī wūfàn. I am having my lunch.

However, you must use zài, not zhèngzài, in the following two cases:

(a) when the negating word bù is used;
(b) when an adverb such as hái (still) is used.

For example:
9 Construction... bù... le

The construction ... bù + verb + le conveys the meanings of '... no longer/not ... any more'. Often, the verbs being negated are verbs indicating habitual behaviour. For example:

Tā tāitài bù gōngzuò le.
His wife no longer works.

Wǒ bù xiǎng qù Zhōngguó le.
I don't want to go to China any more.

10 Use of dōu

This word, always placed after the pronoun, can convey the meanings of 'both' or 'all' depending on the context. For example:

Tāmen dōu xiǎng xiān chī wūfān.
They all want to have lunch first.

Wǒ hé wǒ zhàngfù dōu tuīxū le.
Lit. I and my husband both have been retired.
Both my husband and I are retired.

To say 'none of us ...', or 'neither ...', simply add the negation word before the verb:

Tāmen bù dōu xiǎng xiān chī wūfān.
None of them wants to have lunch first.

Wǒ hé wǒ zhàngfù bù gōngzuò le.
Neither I nor my husband works any more.

11 Use of the verb shàng

The verb shàng (to go to) is interchangeable with qù (to go to) in most cases. The main difference is that shàng is more colloquial and informal. For example:

A: Nǐ shàng/qù nǎr?   Where are you going?
B: Shàng/qù cānghūng.   Dining-room.

However, shàng must be used in the following:

shàng xué  to go to school (any school)
shàng jiē  to go to the town
(lit. 'go to the street')

When le is used after shàng xué or shàng xiǎoxué, it means 'to have started school':

A: Nǐde érzi shàng (xiǎo) xué le ma?   Has your son started school yet?
B: Méi shàng.      Not yet.

Let us see the difference between shàng and qù in the following sentences:

Jane yìjīng shàng xiǎoxué le.
Jane has started primary school.

Jane yìjīng qù xiǎoxué le.
Jane has gone to the primary school. [She may be a pupil, a teacher there or she may have gone there for a visit.]

You may have noticed that when the words xiǎo (small), zhōng (middle/medium) and dà (big/large) precede xué (to study), we get:

xiǎoxué     primary school
zhōngxué    secondary school/middle school
dàxué      university

If we add the word shēng (i.e. one who studies) to xué, we have the noun xuēshēng (student). If we add xiǎo, zhōng and dà to xuēshēng, we have: xiǎo xuēshēng (primary-school pupil), zhōng xuēshēng (secondary-school student) and dà xuēshēng (university student). Note that shēng has become neutral tone in the above noun phrases.

12 To negate yǒu yìsi

To negate yǒu yìsi, the negation word méi must be used. You can say either méi yǒu yìsi or méi yìsi (with yǒu omitted) to mean 'to be not interesting' or 'to be boring'. If adverbs such as hěn (very) are used, (a) they must be placed before the negation word; and (b) yǒu is always omitted. For example:

Zhè hěn shū méi yǒu yìsi. This book is not interesting.
Zhè ge rèn hěn méi yìsi. This person is very boring.
13 Use of ǒu

When ǒu is used before personal pronouns, it can mean ‘for/to somebody’ or ‘to be for/to somebody’. If it means ‘for/to somebody’, the ǒu phrase is placed before the verb. For example:

ǒu wǒ jièshào yīxī ni tāitài, hǎo ma?
Lit. To me introduce your wife, is it OK?
Will you introduce your wife to me please?

If it means ‘to be for/to somebody’, the sentence order is similar to English. For example:

Zhè bēi kāfēi ǒu nǐ. This cup of coffee is for you.

To convey the meaning ‘to tell somebody about something’, use the construction ǒu somebody + jiāngjiāng + something. For example:

ǒu nǐ yēye jiāngjiāng nǐde qínkuàng ba.
Lit. To your grandpa tell your present situation
Please tell your grandpa about yourself.

Exercises

Exercise 1

Match the Chinese kinship terms on the left with their English equivalents on the right:

1 jiéjí 5 méimei (a) elder brother (e) grandfather
2 dìdì 6 àyí (b) elder sister (f) grandmother
3 gēgē 7 nǎinai (c) younger sister (g) uncle
4 yèyè 8 shūshū (d) younger brother (h) aunt

Exercise 2

Change the following sentences into the present continuous tense using zài and then translate them into English:

(a) Wǒ māmā hē kāfēi.
(b) Yìngmǐ chī záofàn ma?
(c) Tā bù yǒuyònɡ.
(d) Nǐ bàba gōngzuò ma?

Exercise 3

Fill in the blanks using qù or shàng:

(a) Nǐ àirén (spouse) ________ nár le?
(b) Wǒmén de érzi zài ________ dàxué.
(c) Tāmen xià de xíngqí ________ Zhōngguó.
(d) Nǐ de nǚér ________ xiàoxué le ma?

Exercise 4

Answer the following questions in Chinese regarding Dialogue 1:

(a) Shàotáng jièhūn le ma?
(b) Shéi shì Shàotáng de tāitài?
(c) Shàotáng de tāitài shì nà guò rén?
(d) Shàotáng hē (‘and’) tā tāitài yǒu háizi ma?
(e) Tāmén de háizi jiào shénme?
(f) Zhūgāng shì bù shì zhōng xuéshēng?
(g) Yíngmĕi shì shéi?

Exercise 5

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

(a) Lào Zāng has become the manager of the Beijīng Hôtel.
(b) They have two children. Both children have Chinese names.
(c) We have all retired.
(d) They no longer work.
(e) My younger brother hasn’t started school yet.
(f) Going to school is very interesting.
(g) What subject do you study?
(h) Please tell me about your husband.
(i) It is my turn to speak Chinese.

Dialogue 2

Nǐ gàn shénme gōngzuò? 你干什么工作?
What do you do? 什么工作

Miao Lan and Liu Xiaohong are good friends. When Miao Lan is on a business trip in Shenzhen, Liu Xiaohong, who lives in Guangzhou, makes a special trip to Shenzhen to meet Miao Lan.
MIAO LAN: Quite well, thank you. Are your mother and father still living in Guangzhou?

LIU XIAOHONG: Yes, they are. They always talk about you. How many days are you staying in Shenzhen for?

MIAO LAN: Pity that I only stay for four days. I'm afraid I don't have time to go to see them this time. Please send them my regards.

LIU XIAOHONG: I will.

Vocabulary

tīngshuò
huan
gàn
dáoyóu
zài
jiā
lǚyóu
jú
síchōu
mào yì
xīhuàn
fùmǔ
shēn tǐ
bàbà
zhī
dāi
tiān
kǒng pà
kě xī
zhè cì
kàn
huì
to have heard [lit. 'hearsay']
to change
to do
tourist guide
at/in/to be at/to be in
[measure word]
tourism/to travel
bureau/office
silk
trading/trade
parents
health
father/dad
live
stay
day
afraid
pity that...
this time
to visit/to watch/to read
will

Notes to Dialogue 2

14 Nǐ gān shénme gōngzuò?

If you want to ask someone what job he/she is doing, you say: Nǐ gān shénme gōngzuò? (lit. ‘You do what job?’). In a context where the conversation centres around jobs, the above sentence can be
In English, you say *I work for ICI*, and in Chinese, you can say:

Wǒ zài ICI gōngzuò.
*Lit. I at ICI work.*

16 More on measure words

So far, we have learnt two measure words: 个 before people, swimming pools, restaurants, etc.; and 一点儿 before drinks. In Dialogue 2, we have a new measure word, 削, which is often used before companies, organizations, shops, restaurants, etc. For example:

Zhè jià fàdiàn hěn hǎo.
This hotel is very good.

Wǒ bù zài zhè jià gōngsī gōngzuò.
I'm not working for this company.

The noun 天 (day) is one of the few exceptions to the rule of using measure words between numbers and nouns. No measure word is needed between a number and 天. Thus we say, for example, 三天 (three days) not 三 个 天. When 三天 is used in sentences, it can mean 'for three days'. For example:

Wǒ zài Běijīng dài le sān tiān.
I stayed in Beijing for three days.

17 Showing concern over someone else’s parents

It is very common among Chinese people to enquire about each other’s parents, especially their health. The commonly used expression is Ни fùmǔ de shēncháng hǎo ma? (*lit. ‘Your parents’ health is good?’*). Sometimes, de is omitted.

18 More on question word 什

We saw this question word previously in Lesson 4 when it was used to ask about the time. This question word can also be used to ask other number-related questions. However, you must remember that whenever this question word is used, the questioner expects a small number (less than twenty) in the reply. For example:

A: Ni zài Běijīng dài jī tiān?
*How many days are you staying in Beijing for?*

B: Liǎng tiān.
Two days.
If A expects B to stay in Beijing for two years, for instance, he/she has to ask the question in a different way. Let us look at another example:

A: Nǐmén děng gōngsī yǒu jī gè Měiguó rén?
   How many Americans are there in your company?

B: Jiǔ gè.
   Nine.

19 Use of yǒu shíjiān and měi yǒu shíjiān

The Chinese equivalent of I have time to swim is Wǒ yǒu shíjiān yóuyǒng. And the Chinese equivalent of I don't have time to swim is Wǒ měi yǒu shíjiān yóuyǒng or Wǒ měi shíjiān yóuyǒng. Let us look at some more examples:

A: Nǐ jīntiān wǎnshang yǒu shíjiān ma?
   Do you have time tonight?

B: Yǒu (shíjiān).
   Yes, I do.

Xiǎo Wáng ràng wǒ gào su nǐ tā měi shíjiān lái kàn nǐ.
Xiao Wang asks me to tell you that she doesn't have time to come to see you.

20 Verb kàn

In Chinese, for anything that is seen, we use the verb kàn. Thus you can say kàn pénghòu (to visit/see friends), kàn shū (to read a book), kàn zhàopiàn (to look at the photos), kàn diànyǐng (to see a film), kàn diànshū (to watch television) and kàn zúqí (to watch the football).

21 Construction Qǐng wèn . . . hǎo

The phrase Qǐng wèn + somebody + hǎo literally means 'Please ask somebody good', which can be broadly translated as 'Please say hello to somebody' or 'Please give somebody my regards'. For example:

Qǐng wèn nǐ tài tái hǎo.
   Please say hello to your wife.

Qǐng wèn nǐ fǔmǔ hǎo.
   Please give your parents my regards.

22 Another use of hui

The hui which we saw earlier in Lesson 2 means 'to be able to' or 'can'. Another meaning of hui is to express one's willingness to do something or to predict that something is likely to happen. When hui means 'will', de follows it in short replies or occurs at the end of the sentence. For example:

A: Nǐ hui jiàndào Liú Xiàoméi ma?
   Will you see Liu Xiaomei?

B: Hui de.
   Yes, I will.

Tā hui lái zhī wǎnfān de.
   He will come for dinner.

Exercises

Exercise 6

Translate the following sentences into English, differentiating between zài ('to be at/in', or 'at/in') and zài (continuous tense indicator):

(a) Tā bù zhǔ zài Běijīng.
(b) Nǐ fùmǔ hái zài gōngzuò ma?
(c) Mā Lǎn zài chī zāofān.
(d) Wáng Lín zài Běijīng Fǎndiàn gōngzuò.

Exercise 7

Change the following statements into questions using jí and paying particular attention to the underlined words:

Example: Běijīng Fǎndiàn yǒu sān ge cǎntīng. → Běijīng Fǎndiàn yǒu jǐ ge cǎntīng?

(a) Lǎo Wáng yǒu sān ge hái zì.
(b) Wǒ zài Běijīng Fǎndiàn zhù le wǔ tiān.
(c) Tā hē le liǎng bēi kàfēi.
(d) Lǐ Píng yǒu sì ge gēge.
Exercise 8

Based on what we have learnt in this lesson, what do you say on the following occasions in Chinese:

(a) You want to ask your Chinese friend if she has time to go swimming.
(b) Your Chinese friend wants to invite you to a party but unfortunately you don’t have time, so you apologize, saying .
(c) You want to ask a Chinese person what job he does.
(d) You want to ask your Chinese friend to pass on your regards to her parents.

Exercise 9

Fill in the blanks with appropriate measure words if necessary:

(a) Wǒ zài Shànghăi dāi le shí _______ tiān.
(b) Zhè liàng _______ rén hěn méi yǐyí.
(c) Nǐ zài nǎ _______ gōngsī gōngzuò?
(d) Wǒ mén de dàxué yǒu yī _______ yóuyōng chí.
(e) Tā hě le sān _______ kāfei.

Exercise 10

Translate the following into Chinese:

(a) I like my work very much.
(b) I want to go to visit my parents.
(c) Will he come to visit me?
(d) Fang Shu works for the Beijing Tourist Bureau.
(e) Where do you live?

Characters

1 Learning to write:
(a) Verb(s) kàn (to see/read/watch) and xǐhuan (to like)

kàn

Exercise 11

Translate the following sentences into Chinese using characters:

(a) I want to go to China.
(b) Where does she want to go?

2 Recognizing the sign lǚyóu jú (tourist bureau)

If you travel in China, especially on your own, and would like some help with your rail tickets, flight tickets or other practical matters,
the best place to contact is 旅游局 (tourist bureau). Thus, the following sign could be important:

旅游局

lù yóu jú

Reading/listening comprehension

Read the following dialogue first, and then answer the questions in English. If you have the recording, listen first, and then answer the questions:

Yang Ning and Gu Liang, who are very good friends, have not seen each other for a long time. They run into each other, and . . .

Yang Ning: Hào jù bù jiàn, Gù Liáng. Tingshuō nǐ huàn gōngzuò le.
Gù Liáng: Shí de.
Yang Ning: Shénme gōngzuò?
Yang Ning: Yǒu yìsi ma?
Gù Liáng: Tīng yǒu yìsi. Nǐ zěnme yàng, Yáng Níng?
Yang Ning: Wǒ jiéhūn le.
Gù Liáng: Zhēn de? Nǐ àiren gànb shénme gōngzuò?
Yang Ning: Tā shì xiǎoxué lǎoshī. Nǐ xiǎng rènshì tā ma?
Gù Liáng: Dāngrán xiàng.
Yang Ning: Jīntiān wǎnshàng nǐ yǒu shòujīn ma?
Gù Liáng: Kōngpà méi yǒu.
Yang Ning: Jīntiān wǎnshàng ne?
Gù Liáng: Jīntiān wǎnshàng yǒu shòujīn.
Yang Ning: Nǐmài nǐ lái wǒ men jiā chǐ wǎnfàn.
Gù Liáng: Tài hǎo le. Xièxiè.

Vocabulary

fānyì translator/interpreter
míngtiān tomorrow
ài rén spouse [lit. 'love person']

Questions

A What is Gu Liang's current occupation?
B Who is Gu Liang's employer?
C What is the surprise news from Yang Ning?
D What does Yang Ning's wife do as a job?
E When and where is Gu Liang going to meet Yang Ning's wife?
6 Riqi he tianqi
日期和天气
The date and the weather

By the end of this lesson, you should be able to:
• say the days of the week, dates, months of the year and years
• use time expressions appropriately
• find out information regarding dates and days
• use the question words shenme shihou, duojiu and haiishi
• make simple comments on the weather
• recognize and write more characters

Dialogue 1
Jintian shi xingqi ji? 今天是星期几?
What day is it today?

Below is a dialogue in a classroom between a teacher and her pupils in a primary school in China

Teacher: Jintian shi xingqi ji?
Teacher: 今天是星期几?

Pupil A: Jintian shi xingqi’er.
Pupil A: 今天是星期二.

Teacher: Yi ge xingqi you ji tiian?
Teacher: 一 个星期有几天?

Pupil B: Yi ge xingqi you qi tian.
Pupil B: 一 个星期有七天.

Teacher: Yi nian you ji ge yue?
Teacher: 一年有几 个 月?

Pupil C: Yi nian you shi er ge yue.
Pupil C: 一年有十二个 月.

Teacher: Mingtian shi ji hao?
Teacher: 明天是几号?

Pupil D: Mingtian shi yi ji jiu yi niann yiyue shibai hao.
Pupil D: 明天是一九九四年一月十八号.

Teacher: Yinian you ji ge ji jie? Tamen shi shenme?
Teacher: 一年有几个季节? 它们是什么?

Pupil E: Si ge jijie. Tamen shi chuntian, xiatian, qiutian he dongtian.
Pupil E: 四个季节, 它们是春天, 夏天, 秋天和冬天.

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jintian</td>
<td>jintian</td>
<td>today</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xingqi’er</td>
<td>xingqi’er</td>
<td>Tuesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nian</td>
<td>nian</td>
<td>year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yue</td>
<td>yue</td>
<td>month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mingtian</td>
<td>mingtian</td>
<td>tomorrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hao</td>
<td>hao</td>
<td>date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yijijiusi niann</td>
<td>yijijiusi niann</td>
<td>一九九四年</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yiyue</td>
<td>yiyue</td>
<td>January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tamen</td>
<td>tamen</td>
<td>they (inanimate objects)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jijie</td>
<td>jijie</td>
<td>season</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuntian</td>
<td>chuntian</td>
<td>spring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiatian</td>
<td>xiatian</td>
<td>summer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qiutian</td>
<td>qiutian</td>
<td>autumn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dongtian</td>
<td>dongtian</td>
<td>winter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notes to Dialogue 1

1 Days of the week

To form the words for the first six days of the week, put xingqi in front of the numbers from ‘one’ to ‘six’. The word xingqi literally means ‘week’ when used by itself but for our purpose here we can think of it as meaning ‘weekday’.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>xingqi’iyi</td>
<td>Monday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xingqi’ér</td>
<td>Tuesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xingqi’sàn</td>
<td>Wednesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xingqi’ì</td>
<td>Thursday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xingqi’wù</td>
<td>Friday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xingqi’lù</td>
<td>Saturday</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

‘Sunday’ is xingqi’r or xingqi’àn, ri being a formal term for ‘the sun’ and tian meaning ‘day’ or ‘sky’.

2 Months of the year

The word for ‘month’ is yuè. Simply place numbers from ‘one’ to ‘twelve’ in front of yuè:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yìyuè</td>
<td>January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>èr yuè</td>
<td>February</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sān yuè</td>
<td>March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sì yuè</td>
<td>April</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wǔ yuè</td>
<td>May</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liù yuè</td>
<td>June</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>qìyuè</td>
<td>July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bā yuè</td>
<td>August</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiù yuè</td>
<td>September</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shì yuè</td>
<td>October</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shí yuè</td>
<td>November</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shì’èryuè</td>
<td>December</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Year and date

If you want to express a particular year, simply say the numbers individually. However, remember to use the word nián (year) at the end to differentiate the year from other numbers. For example:

1994 yìjiùjiùsì nián 1840 yìbāshílíng nián

As in English, the first two numbers of the year can be omitted. For example, ‘1994’ can be shortened to ‘94’, jiùsì nián. The order for a date including month and year is the reverse of that used in English. The date is thus spoken in the following order: year, month and then date. Also the term hào or rì (the former is the spoken form and the latter the written form for ‘date’) must be used. For example:

27 December 2001 èr ling líng yì nián shì’èryuè èr shí sì hào/rì.
10 February 1994 yì jiù jiù sì nián èr yuè shì hào/rì.

4 Absence of prepositions in front of time phrases

In English, prepositions such as at, in, on for must be put in front of the time, the month, the day, the date and expressions of duration. Whilst in Chinese, it is all very simple because such words are not needed in front of time phrases. For example:

Wǒ māma xìngqí’sàn lái kàn wǒmen.  
My mother is coming to see us on Wednesday.

Xīnháng liù yuè qì hào kāi shī gōngzuò.  
Xinhang starts working on 7 June.

Note that in the above two sentences, both time phrases refer to a particular day or date, so they are put in front of the verb. If the time phrase refers to a period of time, it is usually put after the verb. For example:

Wǒzài Lúndūn zhù le liàng nián.  
I lived in London for two years.

Tā zài Lāncaster xué le bā ge yuè Yīngwén.  
He learnt English in Lancaster for eight months.

5 Use of measure word gè before years, months and weeks

In Note 16 of Lesson 5, we saw the omission of the measure word gè in between the number and the noun tián (day). The same principle applies to nián (year), i.e. there is no need to use measure words between the number and the noun nián. For example:

Wǒ xué le sān nián Yīngwén.  I learnt English for three years.
However, you must use the measure word elerik in between the number and the noun yuè (month). For example: săn ge yuè (three months) as opposed to săn yuè (March). As for xínghì (week), you can either use трад or drop it. Both usages are correct:

Tā zài Běijīng dài le săn ge xínghì.

or Tā zài Běijīng dài le săn xínghì.

He/she stayed in Beijing for three weeks.

6 More on the question word 说道

When 说道 is used to ask the current day (or day in the near future) and the date, it means 'which' rather than 'how many'. For example:

Jīntiān shì xínghì 说道?

Lit. Today is weekday which?

What day is it today?

Jīntiān shì 说道 hǎo?

Lit. Today is which date?

What's the date today?

The question Jīntiān shì 说道 hǎo? can be replied to with a full answer specifying the year, the month and the date, or by just giving the date, depending on the context:

A: Xià ge xínghì èr shì 说道 hǎo?

Lit. Next Tuesday is which date?

A: What's next Tuesday's date?

B: Èrshíwǔ 说道. 25th.

To ask questions such as 'How many days/weeks/months/seasons ... ?', the measure word трад must be used between the question word 说道 and those nouns which require measure word трад in the reply (see Note 5 above). For example:

Yī nián yǒu 说道 ji yuè?

Lit. A year have how many months?

How many months are there in a year?

Nǐ xué le 说道 nián Zhōngguó?

Lit. You learnt how many years Chinese?

For how many years did you learn Chinese?

7 Use of 说道

The conjunction word 说道 (and) is never used to link two sentences. When two sentences share the same subject (e.g. 'you', 'I'), the subject is omitted in the second sentence and a comma is used. For example:

Tā jīn nián ěrshí suí, shì dà xuéshēng.

He is twenty this year and he is a university student.

The word 说道 is only used to link two or more than two nouns, pronouns or noun phrases. Even then, it can be omitted. And, if you want to say 'somebody and I', 'I' is usually mentioned first in Chinese. For example:

Wǒ yǒu liǎng ge gēge, yī ge dìdi.

I have two elder brothers and one younger brother.

Wǒ 说道 Xiāo Lì xīhuán yóuyòng, (说道) píng pāng qiú.

Xiao Li and I like swimming and table-tennis.

Exercises

Exercise 1

Look at the following calendars and answer the questions:

(a) Jīntiān shì xínghì 说道?

(b) Jīntiān shì 说道 yuè 说道 hǎo?

(c) Nǐ 说道 hào qù Zhōngguó?
Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks with the measure word 个 when necessary, and then translate the sentences into English:

(a) Xiao Fang zai Shenzhen da le san _______ tian (three days).
(b) Wo you san _______ yue (three months).
(c) Wo zhangfu xiang zai Zhongguo you liang _______ xingqi (two weeks).
(d) Wo dizi zai Xian gongzu le si _______ nian (four years).
(e) Wang Dongping you wu _______ gege (five elder brothers).
(f) Paul xiang ba _______ yue (August) qu Taiwan.

Exercise 3

Translate the following sentences from English to Chinese:

(a) For how many years did Feixia live in Guangzhou?
(b) Tomorrow is Thursday.
(c) For how many months did Andrew learn Chinese?
(d) I want to go to China this March.
(e) What is next Friday’s date?
(f) My husband has two younger brothers and one elder sister.

Dialogue 2

Shénme shíhou . . .? 什么时候 . . .?  When . . . ?

Mick is planning to go to Beijing and he wants to find out what the weather is like. So he is chatting with Li Lu, a Chinese student who comes from Beijing.

Mick: Beijing de dongtian leng ma?
Li Lu: Feichang leng. Chang xiaxue.
Mick: Xiatian zai zai yang?
Li Lu: Qiuyue he baiyu tebie re.

Mick: Shénme jijie zuihao?
Li Lu: Qiutian, shiyue zuoyou. Zénme? Ni dasuan qu Beiijing ma?
Mick: Shi'a.
Li Lu: Shénme shihou?
Mick: Jiran ni shou shiyue zuihao, wo jui ming niyan shiyue qu.
Li Lu: Ni qu liyou hai shi gongzuou?
Mick: Liyou jia gongzuou.
Li Lu: Ni qu duojijiu?
Mick: Liyou liang ge xingqi, gongzuou san tian, yigong dayue san ge xingqi.

Mick: Beijing de dongtian leng ma?
Li Lu: Feichang leng, changxue.
Mick: Liyou jia gongzuou.
Li Lu: Shi'a.
Mick: Shénme jijie zuihao?
Li Lu: Qiutian, shiyue zuoyou. Zénme? Ni dasuan qu Beiijing ma?
Mick: Shi'a.
Li Lu: Shénme shihou?
Mick: Jiran ni shou shiyue zuihao, wo jui ming niyan shiyue qu.
Li Lu: Ni qu liyou hai shi gongzuou?
Mick: Liyou jia gongzuou.
Li Lu: Ni qu duojijiu?
Mick: Liyou liang ge xingqi, gongzuou san tian, yigong dayue san ge xingqi.

Mick: Shi'a.
Li Lu: Shénme jijie zuihao?
Mick: Jiran ni shou shiyue zuihao, wo jui ming niyan shiyue qu.
Li Lu: Ni qu liyou hai shi gongzuou?
Mick: Liyou jia gongzuou.
Li Lu: Ni qu duojijiu?
Mick: Liyou liang ge xingqi, gongzuou san tian, yigong dayue san ge xingqi.
Notes to Dialogue 2

8 Use of cháng

This adverb, meaning ‘often’ or ‘frequently’, is always placed before the verb, and it is often repeated like some one-syllable words. For example:

Nǐ cháng yóuyǒng ma?  Do you often swim?
Andrew chángcháng chúnmén.  Andrew is frequently away.
Wǒ bù cháng hé káfei.  I don’t often drink coffee.

9 Use of zúi

In English, the word most cannot be put in front of every adjective or adverb (e.g. ‘the most difficult’ but ‘the easiest’). However, in Chinese, the word zúi, meaning ‘most’, can be placed in front of every word or verbal phrase to describe its degree. For example:

Xióo Wáng zúi niánqìng.  Xiao Wang is the youngest.
Zhè bèn shū zúi yóu yìsì.  This book is most interesting.
Tā zúi bù xǐhuān zuò fàn.  He dislikes cooking most.

10 More on de after adjectives

One-syllable adjectives such as hǎo (good), lǎo (old), dà (big), etc., can be put before nouns without using de. For example:

hǎo pénghǒu  good friend
lǎo dà xuēshēng  old university student
dà fàndiàn  big hotel

Most two-syllable adjectives such as piāoliàng (beautiful), gāoxìng (happy), etc., when used to modify nouns, require the use of de before the noun. For example:

gāoxìng de yì tiān  a happy day
piāoliàng de fǎndiàn  beautiful hotel

However, once these adjectives (both one-syllable and two-syllable) are modified by adverbs such as tèbì (extremely), hěn (very), zúi (most), etc., de must be used in between the adjective and the noun. For example:

zúi hào de pénghǒu  best friend
tèbì dà de fǎndiàn  extremely big hotel
hěn lǎo de dà xuēshēng  very old university student
fēicháng piāoliàng de dàyì  very beautiful coat

11 Use of zěnme

Although zěnme is translated as ‘why?’ in this context, it is not actually seeking an answer but is used to express surprise. For example:

A: Māma, zěnmen jǐ diǎn chí fàn?  Mum, what time are we going to eat?
B: Zěnme, nǐ è le ma?  Why? Are you already hungry?

However, zěnme can mean ‘how come?’, which is weaker than wéishénme (why?), which we learnt in Lesson 3. For example:

A: Nǐ jīntiān zěnme bù gāoxìng?  Why come you aren’t happy?
B: Wǒ yě bù zhīdào.  I don’t know either.

A: Nǐ wéishénme jīntiān bù shàngxué?  Why are you not going to school today?
B: Yīnwēi jīntiān shì xīngqìtiān.  Because it’s Sunday.

12 Adding of a

In spoken Chinese, especially in southern China, a is frequently attached to some short expressions. It does not carry any specific meaning but merely adds a touch of informality and friendliness.
For example, if someone is knocking on your door, you can say Shéi'a? (Who is it?). Also, when you see something beautiful, you can say Zhēn piàoliàng'a! (Really beautiful!).

13 Position of the question words shénme shíhou

These question words mean 'when'. They are used to ask about dates and days, not the actual time. They are usually placed before the verb. For example:

Nǐ érzi shénme shíhou qù Xiāng Gǎng gōngzuò?
When is your son going to Hong Kong to work?

Nǐ māma shénme shíhou lái Yīngguó?
When is your mother coming to England?

14 Construction Jírán . . . jiù . . .

Jiù usually goes with the expression jírán to mean 'as . . . (then . . .)'. It is the same word as the emphatic jiū in Lesson 3 but here it is used differently. The first half of the construction gives a reason, and the second half is either a suggestion or a decision. For example:

Jírán nǐ táitái shēntǐ bù hǎo, nǐ jiù huí jiù ba.
As your wife is not feeling well, please go home.

Jírán shíyuè shì zuì hǎo de jíjié, wǒ jiù shíyuè qù Běijīng.
As October is the best season, I shall go to Beijing in October.

15 Question word háishi

Whenever you want to ask a question which gives two or more options, and you want the respondent to specify one or the other, put háishi in between the last two choices. Thus, háishi can only be used to raise questions. For example:

Nǐ shì Yīngguórén háishi Měiguórén?
Are you British or American?

Tā xiǎng xiān chī wǔfàn háishi xiān yóuyǐng?
Does she want to have lunch first or swim first?

16 Question words duō jiù

The question words duō jiù (how long?) are used if you have no idea at all of duration – for how long the other person is staying in Beijing, for example:

Nǐ dài suàn zài Běijīng dài duō jiù?
How long are you staying in Beijing for?

But if you know that he/she is only staying for a couple of days, weeks, months, etc. you use the question word jí.

17 Difference between dàyuè and zuòyuè

The word zuòyuè (about/around) was introduced earlier, in Lesson 2. The difference between zuòyuè and dàyuè is that they occur in different positions in the sentence. Dàyuè is always put in front of the phrase it modifies, whilst zuòyuè always follows the phrase it modifies. For example:

A: Nǐ dài suàn zài Měiguó dài duō jí?
   How long do you plan to stay in America?

B: Dàyuè liàng ge yuè.
   About two months.

   Jiajiā sānshí suí zuòyuè.
   Jiajia is about thirty years old.

Exercises

Exercise 4

Translate the following expressions into Chinese paying attention to the use of de:

(a) my best friend
(b) extremely big swimming pool
(c) small restaurant
(d) that young and beautiful university student
(e) the oldest man

Exercise 5

Convert the following statements into questions using shénme shíhou (when?) or duō jíu (how long?) paying special attention
to the underlined words, and then translate the sentences into English:

(a) Mick dāsuàn míng nián qù Zhōngguó.
(b) Zhāng Jūn zài Tàiwān gōngzuò le wǔ nián.
(c) Lào Lǐ de nǚér xià ge yuè shàngxué.
(d) Wǒ xiǎng zài Shānghǎi dàì sān tiān.

Exercise 6

Fill in the blanks using dāyuè or zuòyòu:

(a) Wǒmen dāsuàn liù diān _______ chǐ wǎn fàn.
(b) A: Nǐ zài Shènzhèn gōngzuò le duō jiǔ?
   B: _______ sān nián bān.
(c) Wáng jīngli sǐshìwù suí _______.
(d) Wǒ de Yīngguó péngyou _______ liùyuè lái kàn wǒ.

Exercise 7

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

(a) Do you want to have lunch at twelve or one o’clock?
(b) Do you often swim?
(c) Why are you unhappy?
(d) Since you are not hungry, I’ll eat first.

Characters

1 Learning to write:
(a) Jīntiān shí xīngqītiān (Today is Sunday)

| jīn | 今 |
| tiān | 天 |
| shí | 是 |
| xīng | 星 |
| qī | 期 |
| tiān | 天 |

The top part of shí and xīng is very similar. It is called the ‘sun radical’ 日. The vertical strokes of the ‘sun radical’ for shí are longer than the horizontal ones 日 whilst the horizontal strokes of the ‘sun radical’ for xīng are longer than the vertical ones 日.

(b) zài (in/at), jiā (home/family) and lǎo (old)

The word zài consists of six strokes:

```
在
```

Now you know how to write, for example, tā bù zài (She is not in) in characters:

```
她不在
```

The noun jiā consists of ten strokes:

```
家
```

Note that the top part is the ‘roof radical’. Now you know how to write, for example, Wǒ jiā zài Běijīng (My home is in Beijing) in characters:

```
我家在北京
```

The adjective lǎo consists of six strokes:

```
老
```
2 Recognizing some common Chinese family names

Li  李
Wáng  王
Zhāng  张
Líu  刘

Exercise 8

Use the following components (as many times as you like) to form as many characters as you can:

女 口 马 子 也

Reading/listening comprehension ☝️

1 Below is a postcard from Feng Ying, who lives in the United States, to her parents, who live in China. Read it carefully and then answer the questions in Chinese. If you have the recording, listen first, and then answer the questions in Chinese.

Vocabulary

qín’ài  dear
xiě xìn  to write a letter
Jiùjīnshān  San Francisco
xiāng nǐmén  dear

Questions

A Feng Ying shénme shihou qu Jiùjīnshān?
B Feng Ying qu Jiùjīnshān lūyōu ma?
C Feng Ying qu Jiùjīnshān gǎn shénme?
D Feng Ying dàsuàn zài Jiùjīnshān dài duō jīn?
E Jiùjīnshān de xiàtiān zênme yàng?
F Feng Ying de gége zhù zài Méiguó ma?

2 Read aloud the following phrases or words and add on the correct tone marks. If you have the recording, listen first, and then add on the correct tone marks:

(a) yíyue (January)
(b) sān gē yuē (three months)
(c) tebèi da de fándiàn (extremely large hotel)
(d) xīngqī’ér (Tuesday)
7 Mǎi dōngxī (I)
买东西
Shopping (I)

By the end of this lesson, you should be able to:
- tell someone the price of a product
- ask about prices
- tell the shop-assistant what and how many you want to buy
- do some bargaining
- use the question words duō shǎo
- write more characters and recognize more signs

Dialogue 1
Duō shǎo qián? 多少钱？How much is it? ☕️

Anne is from Canada. She is working in Chengdu, capital of Sichuan province in China. Today, she is doing her shopping. She goes into a fruit and vegetable shop where customers are served by shop-assistants.

SHOP-ASSISTANT: Nǐ hǎo. Nǐ xiǎng mǎi shénme?
Anne: Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yīxiě shuǐguǒ.
SHOP-ASSISTANT: Nǐ kàn, wǒmen yǒu xīnxiān de cǎoméi, Hǎinán Dào xiāngjiao, gē zhǒng píngguǒ.
Anne: Zhèxiē shì shénme?
SHOP-ASSISTANT: Lìzhī.
Anne: Duō shǎo qián yì jīn?
SHOP-ASSISTANT: Wǔ kuài bā máo.
Anne: Wǒ yào yì jīn lìzhī. Cǎoméi zěnme mài?
SHOP-ASSISTANT: Sān kuài líng jiǔ fēn yì jīn.

SHOP-ASSISTANT: Nǐ kàn, wǒmen yǒu xīnxiān de cǎoméi, Hǎinán Dào xiāngjiao, gē zhǒng píngguǒ.
Anne: Zhèxiē shì shénme?
SHOP-ASSISTANT: Lìzhī.
Anne: Duō shǎo qián yì jīn?
SHOP-ASSISTANT: Wǔ kuài bā máo.
Anne: Wǒ yào yì jīn lìzhī. Cǎoméi zěnme mài?
SHOP-ASSISTANT: Sān kuài líng jiǔ fēn yì jīn.

Anne: Yào bàn jìn cáoméi. Yǒu méi yǒu táozi?
SHOP-ASSISTANT: Méi yǒu, duìbuqǐ. Hái yào biéde ma?
Anne: Bù yào, xièxiè.
SHOP-ASSISTANT: Yígòng qǐ kuài sān máo liù fēn.
Anne: Gěi nǐ shì kuài.
Anne: Xièxiè.

SHOP-ASSISTANT: 你好。你想买什么？
Anne: 我想买一些水果。
SHOP-ASSISTANT: 你看，我们有新鲜的草莓，海南岛香蕉，各种苹果。
Anne: 这些是什么？
SHOP-ASSISTANT: 荔枝。
Anne: 多少钱一斤？
SHOP-ASSISTANT: 五块八毛。
Anne: 我要一斤荔枝。草莓怎么卖？
SHOP-ASSISTANT: 三块零六分一斤。
Anne: 要半斤草莓。有没有桃子？
SHOP-ASSISTANT: 没有，对不起，还要别的吗？
Anne: 不要，谢谢。
SHOP-ASSISTANT: 一共七块三毛六分。
Anne: 给你十块。
SHOP-ASSISTANT: 好的，找你两块六毛四。
Anne: 谢谢。

Vocabulary

| 买 | xī | to buy |
| yīxié | 一些 | some |
| shuǐguǒ | 水果 | fruit |
| nǐ kàn | 你看 | have a look [lit. ‘you look’] |
| xīnxiān | 新鲜 | fresh |
| cǎoméi | 草莓 | strawberry |
| Hǎiínán Dào | 海南岛 | Hainan Island |
| xiāngjiao | 香蕉 | banana |
| gē zhǒng | 各种 | various kinds |
| píngguǒ | 苹果 | apple |
| zhèxiē | 这些 | these |
| lìzhī | 荔枝 | lychee |
| duō shǎo | 多少 | how much/how many |
| qián | 钱 | money |
| Duō shǎo qián? | 多少钱？ | How much is it？ |
Notes to Dialogue 1

1 Currency terms

In mainland China and Taiwan, the currency word is yuan, for which the informal term is kuài. One yuan consists of ten jiao, the informal term for which is mao. And one jiao or one mao consists of ten fen. Let us list them separately:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal</th>
<th>Formal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kuài</td>
<td>yuan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mao</td>
<td>jiao</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fen</td>
<td>fen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The sign for Chinese yuan is ¥. Let us look at the following prices expressed with informal currency terms:

¥ 0.05   wu fen
¥ 0.80   ba mao

2 Unit of weight

The official unit of weight is gongjin (kilogram). However, jin (half a kilo) is most commonly used in dealing with small quantities of goods, especially in shops. As jin itself is a unit of weight, measure words are not needed in between a number and jin. For example:

A: Ni yao ji jin pingguo? How many half-kilos of apples do you want?
B: Wo yao liang jin pingguo. I want a kilo of apples.

3 Use of place names

Place names (e.g. names of cities and countries) can be used as adjectives in front of nouns. For example:

Zhongguo fan          Chinese food
Yingguo gongsi        British company
Mengguo pengyou       American friends
Hainan Dao xiangjiao  Hainan bananas
4 Asking the price

The most important phrase to remember is Duō shǎo qián? You can specify the goods and the quantity. For example:

Pingguō duō shǎo qián yì jīn?
Lit. Apple how much money one jīn? How much is a half-kilo of apples?

Duō shǎo qián yì jīn pingguō?
Lit. How much money one jīn apple? How much is a half-kilo of apples?

If the context makes it clear that you are talking about – for example, bananas – you can simply say:

Duō shǎo qián? or Duō shǎo qián yì jīn?

Another common way of asking the price is Zénme mài?, which can be broadly translated as ‘How is it sold?’ If you want to specify the goods, they should always be placed at the beginning of the question. For example:

Lizhi zénme mài? How are lychees sold?
Lit. Lychee how sell?

5 Difference between duō shǎo and jī

As we learnt before, when the question word jī (how many?) is used, the questioner expects a small quantity (fewer than twenty) in the reply. Another thing to remember about jī is that in most cases either a measure word or unit word must be used. Duō shǎo (how many? how much?) does not have such restrictions. For example:

Nǐ yào jī jīn xiāngjiāo?
How many jīns of bananas do you want?

Nǐ yào duō shǎo xiāngjiāo?
What quantity of bananas do you want?

6 Difference between yào and xiāng

Look at these three sentences:

Wǒ yào kāfēi.
Lit. I want coffee.

Wǒ xiāng kāfēi.
Lit. I want drink coffee.

The verb yào can be followed by nouns or verbs whilst xiāng must be followed by another verb if the meaning ‘to want’ is intended. When xiāng is followed by a noun or a sentence, it means ‘to miss’ or ‘to think’. For example:

Wǒ xiāng kāfēi. I miss coffee.
Wǒ xiāng, tā èrshí zuòyou. I think he’s about twenty.

There is also a subtle difference in meaning between yào and xiāng. Xiāng is more like the English ‘would like’ when followed by another verb whilst yào is a straightforward ‘to want’ showing a certain degree of determination. For example:

Wǒ xiāng mái yīxiē shuǐguǒ. I’d like to buy some fruit.
Wǒ yào mái yīxiē shuǐguǒ. I want to buy some fruit.

7 Verbs mái and mái

Although mái (to buy) and mái (to sell) share the same pronunciation, they differ in tones and character representation. Do not worry if you cannot get the tone right, because the context will always help.

8 Use of zhào

This verb has several meanings. The meaning ‘to return’ is only restricted to situations where someone gives someone else the change. For example:

A: Gěi nǐ wǔ kuài.
Here is five kuài.

B: Zhào nǐ yī kuài bā máo.
Here is one kuài and eight bā máo change.

(A being the customer, and B the shop-assistant.) Remember that zhào cannot be used to mean ‘to return’ other things (e.g. books).
9 Extra vocabulary on fruit

You may find the following words useful:
lízì pear       júzì tangerine
xìngzì apricot   bōhuò pineapple
chénzì orange    xīguā water melon

10 Construction yǒu méi yǒu

Like ... shì bù shì ...? (see Note 6 of Lesson 5), ... yǒu méi yǒu ...? is an alternative pattern to ... yǒu ... ma? For example:

Nǐ yǒu Zhōngguó chá ma?

becomes Nǐ yǒu méi yǒu Zhōngguó chá?

Do you have any Chinese tea?

Exercises

Exercise 1

Look at the following drawings, paying attention to the price next to each drawing, and answer the questions using complete sentences:

(a) Píngguǒ duō shǎo qián yì jīn?
(b) Shénme liù kuài yì jīn?
(c) Xiāngjiāo zěnme má?
(d) Cāoméi duō shǎo qián yì jīn?
(e) Shénme liǎng kuài líng wǔ yì jīn?
(f) Duō shǎo qián yì jīn lízhī?

Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks using yào or xiāng, and in some cases either can be used:

(a) (When asked what David wants to drink, his mum says:)
    David ______ yì bēi júzǐ zhī (júzǐ zhī means ‘orange juice’).
(b) Wǒ bù ______ hē kāfēi.
(c) (In a shop) Wǒ ______ sān jīn cāoméi.
(d) Tā ______ xiān chǐ wūfān.

Exercise 3

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

(a) I’d like to buy some Hainan Island bananas.
(b) He doesn’t want strawberries.
(c) I bought a kilo of apples
(d) Do you want anything else?
Dialogue 2
Tai gui le  It's too expensive

Dale is in Taiwan on a business trip. After a week's tough negotiation, he suddenly remembers that he wants to do some shopping. So he asks his Chinese colleague Fan Ting.

Dale: Xiao Fan, xingqitian shangdian guanmen ma?
Fan Ting: Bu guanmen. Suoyoude shangdian, yinhang, youji dou kaimen. Zhenme, ni xiang mai dongxi ma?
Dale: Shi de. Wo xiang gei wo taitai mai ji tiao zhen si weijin, gei xiaohai he pengyou mai yixie liwu.
Fan Ting: Na bu nan. Wo keyi dai ni qu baihuo shangdian.
Dale: Ni tai hao le. Duoxie.

(as they could not find everything Dale would like to buy in the big department stores, they decide to go to a nearby market where bargains are to be found. Dale sees a nice silk tie)

Dale: Xiaojie, zhe tiao lingdai zhenme mai?
Street-vendor: Liang bai wushi kuai yi tiao.
Dale: Tai gui le.
Street-vendor: Liang bai kuai, xing ma?
Dale: San bai wushi kuai mai liang tiao, zhenme yang?
Street-vendor: Hao ba, hao ba.
Dale: Wo yao le.

Dale: Xiao fan, xingqitian shangdian guanmen ma?
Fan Ting: Bu guanmen. Suoyoude shangdian, yinhang, youji dou kaimen. Zhenme, ni xiang mai dongxi ma?
Dale: Shi de. Wo xiang gei wo taitai mai ji tiao zhen si weijin, gei xiaohai he pengyou mai yixie liwu.
Fan Ting: Na bu nan. Wo keyi dai ni qu baihuo shangdian.
Dale: Ni tai hao le. Duoxie.

Street-vendor: Liang bai wushi kuai yi tiao.
Dale: Tai gui le.
Street-vendor: Liang bai kuai, xing ma?
Dale: San bai wushi kuai mai liang tiao, zhenme yang?
Street-vendor: Hao ba, hao ba.
Dale: Wo yao le.

Notes to Dialogue 2
11 Use of suoyoude . . . dou . . .

Back in Lesson 5, we learnt the word dou, which means 'all' in the sense of 'all those who have been mentioned before'. However, if you want to say 'all the banks' inclusively, use suoyoude and dou at the same time. Put suoyoude in front of nouns and dou in front of verbs. For example:
Zài Yīngguó, suǒyǒude yíngháng xīngqìtiān dōu guānmén.
In Britain, all the banks are closed on Sunday.
Suǒyǒude dōngxi dōu hěn guì.
All the things are very expensive.

12 Verbal phrase mǎi dōngxi

Literally, mǎi dōngxi means ‘to buy things’; idiomatically, it means ‘to do shopping’. If you want to say ‘to go shopping’, the verb qu (to go) must be used before mǎi dōngxi. Phrases such as yīxiē (some), yīdiǎn (a little) are inserted in between mǎi and dōngxi.
For example:

Wǒ xiǎoshēng bù xǐhuàn mǎi dōngxi.
My husband does not like going shopping.

Māmā qù mǎi dōngxi le.
Mum has gone shopping.

Tā mǎi le yīxiē dōngxi.
He did some shopping.

13 Construction gěi . . . mǎi . . .

In English, you say I buy something for somebody; in Chinese, you say ‘for somebody I buy something’. For example:

Tā xiǎng gěi tāde xiǎohái mǎi yīxiē lǐwù.
Lit. She want for her children buy some presents.
She wants to buy some presents for her children.

Wǒ gěi wǒde tāitai mǎi le yī tiáo wēijīn.
Lit. I for my wife bought a scarf.
I bought a scarf for my wife.

14 Measure word tiáo

This measure word is used in between a number or pronouns zhěn/zhè (this/that) and certain nouns (e.g. scarf, tie, trousers). For example:

Zhè tiáo língdài hěn piāoliang.
This tie is very beautiful.

Tā mǎi le sān tiáo zhèn sī wēijīn.
She bought three pure silk scarves.

15 Adjective jī

This is the same jī as the question word jī (how many?/which?). However, in this context, it means ‘several’ and is used to refer to any number that is more than one but less than ten. Let us compare jī as a question word to jī as an adjective in the following two sentences:

A: Māmā, wǒ yǒu jī tiáo língdài?
Mum, how many ties do I have?
B: Wǒ zěnme zhídào?
How could I know?

A: Nǐ qù nǎr?
Where are you going?
B: Mǎi dōngxi. Wǒ xiǎng mǎi jī jīn shuǐguò.
Going shopping. I’d like to buy several jins of fruit.

16 Construction dài . . . qǔ/lái

If you want to take someone from where you are to somewhere else, you use the verb dài with qǔ (to take); and if you want to bring someone from somewhere else to where you are, you use the verb dài with lái (to bring). The words qǔ and lái, originally meaning ‘to go’ and ‘to come’ respectively, are directional words in this context. There is always a person’s name or a personal pronoun in between dài and qǔ/lái. Let us look at some examples:

Fān Tīng dài Dale qǔ mǎi dōngxi.
Fan Tīng takes Dale to do the shopping.

Nǐ kěyí dài wǒ qǔ yíngháng ma?
Could you take me to the bank?
Tā bù xiǎng dài tāde xiǎohái lái.
She doesn’t want to bring her children along.

17 Nǐ tài hǎo le

The phrase Nǐ tài hǎo le, literally meaning ‘You are extremely good’, is equivalent to the English expressions It’s very kind of you or You are too kind.
18 Use of Xiǎojie

As China opens to the west, the term xiǎojie (which is like the French word mademoiselle) is becoming more and more popular to address, for example, female shop-assistants instead of the term tóngzhī (comrade). It is also a way of attracting someone’s attention. Xiǎojie can also be used as a title to mean ‘Miss’. For example:

Customer: Xiǎojie, nǐmen yǒu cāomei ma? Miss, do you have strawberries?

(On the phone) Wáng xiǎojie zài ma? Is Miss Wang in?

19 Wǒ yào le

This is a commonly used phrase in shops when you have decided that you want to buy something, which can be broadly translated as ‘I’ll take it’.

Exercises

Exercise 4

You tell the shop-assistant that you would like to buy

(a) a pure silk tie
(b) one kilo of bananas
(c) two scarves

Exercise 5

You ask your Chinese friend if he/she can take you to

(a) a department store
(b) a bank
(c) a post-office

Exercise 6

What would you say on the following occasions based on what we have learnt:

(a) A street-vendor approaches you and asks you if you would like a silk scarf; you see the price tag and you think it is too expensive.
(b) After some bargaining, you have decided to make a purchase.
(c) You are in a fruit shop, but the shop-assistant is not aware of your presence. You want to attract her attention and also ask her if they have lychees.
(d) You are new in a city and a colleague of yours has offered to take you shopping; you want to express your gratitude using a more sophisticated expression.

Exercise 7

Complete the following sentences using the expressions in the brackets, and then translate them into English:

(a) Tā ______ (for his girl-friend) mǎi le yī tiáo zhēn sī wéijīn.
(b) Wǒ yīnggāi qù bāihú shāngdiàn ______ (do some shopping).
(c) Xīngqītiān (all banks) ______ kāimén.
(d) Xiǎo Wáng hē le ______ (several cups of) kāfei.
(e) Wǒ gēge huì ______ (bring my mother) kàn wǒmen.

Characters

1 Learning to write:

(a) Mǎi dōngxi (to go shopping)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>mǎi</th>
<th>买</th>
<th>买</th>
<th>买</th>
<th>买</th>
<th>买</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dōng</td>
<td>东</td>
<td>东</td>
<td>东</td>
<td>东</td>
<td>东</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xī</td>
<td>西</td>
<td>西</td>
<td>西</td>
<td>西</td>
<td>西</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(b) Verbs 要 (to want/to take) and 走 (to walk/to leave)

要一 二 三 四 五 六 七 八 九

The upper part of 要 西 which is pronounced xì, means ‘west’ in isolation; and we have learnt the lower part of 要 女 in Lesson 1. It is the ‘woman radical’ except that here, it is not as thin as it is in 好.

走一 二 三 四 五 六 七

2 Recognizing important signs:

商店 银行 邮局

shāng diàn yín háng yóu jú

Reading/listening comprehension

Read the following dialogue, and then answer the questions in English below. If you have the recording, listen first, and then answer the questions in English.

Bill is going back to Toronto after working in Beijing for a couple of weeks, and he has just done some shopping. A Chinese friend of his, Yang Wen, has come to see him and asks about his shopping.

Yang Wen: Nǐ mǎi le yīxiē shénme?
Bill: Hěnduō dòngxi. Wǒ gěi wǒ tài tài mǎi le yí jiàn shuìyī.
Yang Wen: Zhēn piào liang. Shì zhēn sī ma?
Bill: Shi de.
Yang Wen: Duō shào qián?
Bill: Yī bāi bāshí wǔ kuài. Guì ma?
Yang Wen: Zhēnde bù guì. Zhèxiē shì shènhū?
Bill: Jī tiáo zhuōbù.
Yang Wen: Wǒ kěyì kàn kan ma?
Bill: Dāngrán kěyì.
Yang Wen: Tāi piào liang le.

Vocabulary

hěnduō a lot of/many
jiàn [measure word for clothes]
shuǐyī night gown [lit. ‘sleep clothes’]
zhuōbù table-cloth
kàn kan to take a look

Questions

A What did Bill buy for his wife?
B How much is it?
C What does Yang Wen think of the present Bill has bought for his wife?
D What else did Bill buy?
8 Mǎi dōngxi (Ⅱ)

Dialogue 1

Nǎ jiàn hǎo? 哪件好？Which is better?  

Paul is studying Chinese at a university in Beijing. Today, he is going shopping with his flatmate Liu Hong. They are looking at some sweaters.

Paul:

Nǐ shuō zhè liǎng jiàn máoyī, nǎ jiàn hǎo?

Liu Hong:

Wǒ juéde lù de bǐ huáng de hǎo. Nǐ chuān lù yán sè bǐjiāo hǎo.

Paul:

Hǎo ba, wǒ tīng nǐde.

(Paul has decided to take the green sweater and as he is reaching for his wallet . . .)

Paul:

Zàogào! Wǒ wàng le dài qiánbāo. Xiǎo Liú, nǐ kěyì jiè gěi wǒ yīxiē qián mà?

Liu Hong:

Méi wènti. Nǐ yào duō shào?

Paul:

Sānshí kuài, xīng ma?

Liu Hong:

Xíng. Gòu ma?

Paul:

Gòu le.

Liu Hong:

Gěi nǐ.

Paul:

Tài xièxiè nǐ le. Míngtiān wǒ yídīng huán gěi nǐ qián.

Liu Hong:


Paul:

Hǎo de.

Paul:

小刘，你说这两件毛衣，哪件好？

Liu Hong:

我觉得绿的比黄的好。你穿绿色比较好。

Paul:

好吧，我听你的。

Paul:

糟了！我忘了带钱包。小刘，你可以借给我一些钱吗？

Liu Hong:

没问题，你要多少？

Paul:

三十块，行吗？

Liu Hong:

行。够吗？

Paul:

够了。

Liu Hong:

给你。

Paul:

太谢谢你了。明天我一定还给你钱。

Liu Hong:

不急。咱们去书店看看，好吗？我想买几本书。

Paul:

好的。

Vocabulary

jiàn

件

[m]easure word for clothes

máoyī

毛衣

sweater/jumper

juéde

觉得

to think/to feel

lù

绿

green

bǐ

比

to be compared with

huáng

黄

yellow

chuān

穿

to wear
### Notes to Dialogue 1

1 Nǐ shuō . . .

This is one of the ways to ask someone’s advice. Literally, nǐ shuō means ‘you say’ or ‘you speak’, which can be broadly translated as ‘What do you think . . .?’ or ‘What would you say . . .?’. For example:

*Nǐ shuō zǎimen jǐ diàn qù yóuyǒng?*

*Lit.* You say we what time go swimming?

What time do you think we shall go swimming?

*Nǐ shuō Běijīng dà háishi Lóngdūn dà?*

*Lit.* You say Beijing big or London big?

What would you say? Is Beijing bigger or is London bigger?

### 2 Colours

Below are some commonly used colour words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hóng</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>bái</td>
<td>white</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hēi</td>
<td>black</td>
<td>lán</td>
<td>blue</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The above colour words are adjectives. If you want to say ‘the red’ or ‘the blue one’, simply add de (see Note 14, Lesson 3) to the appropriate colour adjective. If you want to say ‘the white colour’, add yánse (colour) or sè (the same sè as in yánse) to the adjective bái (white). For example:

A: Nǐ yào nǎ zhòng yánse?  
B: Hóng de.

A: Nǐ xīhuàn shénme yánse?  
B: Lán yánse./Lán sè.

If you want to say, for example, ‘dark blue’ or ‘light blue’, place shēn (dark) or qiān (light) in front of lán (blue). Thus we have shēn lán or qiān lán.

### 3 Comparing two things

If you compare A with B and want to say ‘A is better than B’, or ‘A is more beautiful than B’, in Chinese you say:

A bǐ B hǎo.  
A bǐ B piàoliàng.

For example:

*Lìzhī bǐ píngguǒ guì.*

Lychees are more expensive than apples.

*Dōngtiān, Běijīng bǐ Lóngdūn lěng.*

In winter, Beijing is colder than London.

*Zhè jiān lù máoyì bǐ hēi de hǎo.*

This green jumper is better than the black one.

When asking someone’s opinion about two things, you list the two things first, and then ask the question in the usual order. For example:

*Lǜ máoyì hē hēi máoyì, nǎ jiàn hǎo?*

*Lit.* Green jumper and black jumper, which [measure word] be good? Which is better, the green jumper or the black jumper?
4 Use of bijiào

This adverb is very often used in front of adjectives to modify them. It can mean ‘relatively’, ‘quite’ or ‘rather’. It is one of those favourite words people use when they express their opinions or give advice to somebody so that it does not sound too aggressive or bossy. For example:

Wō juède nǐ chuān hēi yánse bijiào hǎo.
Lit. I think you wear black colour quite well.
I think black suits you quite well.

Zhōngwén bijiào nán.
The Chinese language is rather difficult.

5 Verb Ŧìng

The verb Ŧìng (to listen to) can be followed by a noun, a phrase or a sentence. For example:

John xiān huan Ŧìng Zhōngguó yīnyuè.
John likes to listen to Chinese music.

Qīng Ŧìng tā shuā.
Please listen to what he says.

The expression Wō Ŧìng nǐde (lit. ‘I listen to yours’), which occurs in Dialogue 1, can be taken to mean ‘I’ll take your advice’.

6 Verb wāng

This is a very useful word to remember. It is often used together with the past indicator le to mean ‘to forgot’ or ‘to have forgotten’. For example:

Wō wāng le gěi xiāohǎi mái liwū.
I forgot to buy presents for the children.

A: Zhōngwén zěnmě shuō ‘lychee’?
How do you say ‘lychee’ in Chinese?

B: Duìbùqǐ, wō wāng le.
Sorry, I forgot.

7 More on the verb dāi

In Note 16 of Lesson 7, we came across this verb. In that context, it meant ‘to bring’ or ‘to take’ somebody to somewhere. Here, it means ‘to bring’ or ‘to take’ something. For example:

Wō wāng le dāi qiānbāo. I forgot to bring the wallet.
Ni dāi qiān le ma? Have you got some money on you?

When the verb dāi is used without any directional words, it is ambiguous. For example, the sentence Wō měimei dāi le yǐxiē shuǐguǒ can mean ‘My younger sister brought some fruit’ or ‘My younger sister took some fruit’. To make it clear that it means ‘to bring’, you can use the directional word lái after the verb dāi or after the object. For example:

Tā fùmǔ dāi lái le yǐxiē Zhōngguó chá.
Her parents brought some Chinese tea.

or Tā fùmǔ dāi le yǐxiē Zhōngguó chá lái.
Her parents brought some Chinese tea.

Note the position of the past indicator le in the above two sentences.

8 Verb jiē

When jiē is used to mean ‘to lend’, it is almost always used together with the prepositional phrase gěi + somebody (to somebody). For example:

Líu Hóng jiē gěi Paul sānshí kuài qián.
Liu Hong lent thirty yuan to Paul.

Nǐ kěyǐ jiē gěi wǒ yǐxiē qián ma?
Could you lend me some money?

Note that the past particle le is placed after the preposition gěi.

9 Verb huán

The verb huán, meaning ‘to return’ or ‘to give . . . back’ can only be followed by things or money which you have borrowed. It cannot be used to mean ‘to return home’, for example. If you want to say ‘to return something to somebody’ or ‘to return somebody
something’, use the phrase げい + somebody after the verb 问候.
For example:

Rachel: Shénme shìhou 问候 げい wǒ qián?
Lit: You when return to me money?
When are you going to give me the money back?

When the preposition げい is used in a statement, the past indicator 了 is usually placed after げい instead of after the verb; when げい occurs in a yes/no question, 了 is placed immediately before the question word 马. For example:

Tā 问候 げい le wǒ yì běn shū.  She has returned one book to me.
Tā 问候 げい nǐ shuò le ma?  Has she returned any books to you?

The preposition げい is sometimes omitted in the spoken language. For example:

Wǒ wàng le 问候 tā qián.
I forgot to return the money to him.

10 Use of 问候

This is a very useful phrase, especially at the dinner table. Until you say 问候 le (That’s enough) food will be offered to you again and again. The phrase tends to be repeated to show that it is the truth, not out of politeness. For example:

A: 问候 ma?
B: 问候 le, 问候 le.

Remember that although 了 has no significant meaning, it must be used together with 问候 to mean ‘Yes, it’s enough’. However, when the negation word 不 is used, 了 is usually omitted. For example:

A: 问候 ma?
B: 不 问候.

11 Omission of 有 in méi wèntí

The verb 有 (to have) is usually omitted when it is negated by méi in phrases or sentences. For example

Méi 有 wèntí  becomes  méi wèntí  No problem.
Méi 有 guànxì  becomes  méi guànxì  It doesn’t matter.
Wǒ méi 有 kāfēi  becomes  Wǒ méi kāfēi  I don’t have coffee.
Some adjectives you may need in making comparisons:

gāo  tall  dà  old (age only)

āi  short  xiǎo  young (age only)

**Exercise 2**

The following questions do not have a single correct answer. Answer them in Chinese using your own opinions. Then translate the answers into English:

(a) Nǐ zúi xǐhuàn shénme yánse?  
(b) Nǐ bǐjiāo xǐhuàn shénme fàn?  
(c) Zhōngwén hē Fǎwén (French), nà ge nán?  
(d) Fāguó fàn bǐ Yīngguó fàn hào ma?

**Exercise 3**

Match the colour words in the left-hand column with the nouns in the right-hand column (one colour word may go with more than one noun):

(a) lán  1  píngguǒ  
(b) lǜ  2  xiāngjiāo  
(c) huáng  3  chá (tea)  
(d) hóng  4  tiān (sky)

**Exercise 4**

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

(a) Could you lend me two apples?  
(b) He doesn't like lending money to friends.  
(c) When is she going to give me the money back?  
(d) I forgot to bring my wallet.  
(e) Thank you for bringing some Chinese tea.  
(f) Did she take her jumper with her?  
(g) Liu Hong looks younger than Paul.

**Dialogue 2**

*Zhuāng hésuàn  真合算  It’s a bargain* 📕

Jane and Yuan Yi work for a joint-venture company in Guangzhou and they have become very good friends. Yuan Yi speaks a little English. Jane has invited Yuan Yi to her place for a meal. When Jane arrives, she finds Yuan Yi waiting outside her flat.

**Jane:**  Duìbùqǐ. Wǒ chí dào le.  
**Yuan Yi:** Méi guānxì. Wǒ gāng lái.  
**Jane:** Jīntiān xià bān zào. Wǒ qù guāng le guāng zìyóu shíchǎng.  
**Yuan Yi:** Yǒu shénme hǎo dōngxi ma?  
**Jane:** Yǒu hěnduō. Kěxiē wǒ méi dài zúgòu de qián. Wǒ mài le yì jiàn... Zhōngwén zěnme shuō ‘jumper’?  
**Yuan Yi:** ‘Máoyǐ’.  
**Jane:** Dúi. Wǒ mài le jiàn máoyǐ.  
**Yuan Yi:** Ràng wǒ kānkàn. (after she has had a look and felt it)  
   Zhēn bù cuò. Shì chūn mào ma?  
   **Jane:** Bù shì. Hán bāifēnzī bāshí de mào.  
**Yuan Yi:** Mōshāngqu hén shūfu. Duō shǎo qián?  
**Jane:** Wǔshí duō kuài.  
**Yuan Yi:** Zhèméi piānyí! Zhēn hésuàn. Wǒ hěn xǐhuàn zhè zhǒng yánse. Hái yǒu ma?  
**Jane:** Shēn hóng sè de mài guāng le. Zhè shì zuìhòu yī jiàn. Bùguò, hái yǒu hěnduō qītā hāokān de yánse.  
**Yuan Yi:** Wǒ mìngtiān bù shǎng bān, chōu kōng qù kānkàn.

**Jane:**  对不起，我迟到了。  
**Yuan Yi:** 没关系。我刚来。  
**Jane:** 今天下班早。我去逛了逛自由市场。  
**Yuan Yi:** 有什么好东西吗？  
**Jane:**  有很多。可惜我没带足够的钱。我买了一件...  
   中文怎么说‘JUMPER’？  
**Yuan Yi:** ‘毛衣’.  
**Jane:**  对。我买了件毛衣。  
**Yuan Yi:** 让我看看(...) 真不错。是纯毛的吗？  
**Jane:** 不是。含百分之八十的毛。  
**Yuan Yi:** 摸上去很舒服。多少钱？  
**Jane:**  五十多块。  
**Yuan Yi:** 这么便宜！真合算。我很喜欢这种颜色。还有吗？
Notes to Dialogue 2

12 Verbs lái and dào

The verb lái can mean both ‘to come’ or ‘to arrive’, whilst the verb dào can only mean ‘to arrive’. They are interchangeable when the meaning of ‘to arrive’ is intended. For example:

Wǒ gāng lái.  
I’ve just arrived.

Wǒ gāng dào.  
I’ve just arrived.

Note that when the word gāng (just) is used, le is not needed.

13 Adverbs chí and zǎo

Regarding the verb lái (to arrive/come), chí (late) and zǎo (early) are placed after it. For example:

Xiǎo Wáng lái chí le wǔ fēnzhōng.  
Xiao Wang arrived five minutes late.

Wǒ lái zǎo le.  
I arrived earlier.

However, chí must be placed before dào in Wǒ chí dào le (lit. ‘I late arrived’). The expression Wǒ chí dào le is used more frequently than Wǒ lái chí le if the meaning of ‘I’m late’ is intended. An alternative to chí is wǎn, which is often used after the verb.

14 Verb guāng

The verb guāng can be broadly translated as ‘look around’ (usually followed by shopping places). The phrase guāng shāngdiàn has slightly different implications from mài dòngxi. When you guāng shāngdiàn, there is nothing specific you want to buy, whereas the phrase mài dòngxi suggests that you know what you want to buy. For example:

Wǒ xǐhuàn guāng zìyóu shìchǎng.  
I like to look around free markets.

Tā bù xǐhuàn guāng shāngdiàn.  
She doesn’t like to look around shops.
15 Zìyóu shìchǎng

In mainland China, zìyóu shìchǎng, meaning ‘free market’, are places where prices are not controlled by the government. Thus bargains are expected in those ‘free markets’.

16 Repetition of some one-syllable verbs

When some one-syllable verbs are repeated, a touch of informality is added to the expression. For example:

Wǒ qù kǎnkàn.
I’ll go and have a look.

Nǐ xiǎng guāngguāng zìyóu shìchǎng ma?
Would you like to have a look around the market?

Note that the repeated syllable (i.e. the second syllable) is toneless.

If the past indicator le is used when the verb is repeated, it is placed between the two verbs nor after the second verb. For example:

Wǒ kàn le kàn nà běn shū, méi yìsī.
I had a read of that book. Not interesting.

Wǒ tīng le tīng tāde Zhōngwén, hái bù cuò.
I had a listen to her Chinese. Not bad.

Note that because le is toneless, the repeated verb following it must keep its original tone.

17 Phrases shàng bān and xià bān

The verb shàng in shàng bān is the same shàng as in shàng xué (to go to school) (see Note 11 of Lesson 5). The verb xià in xià bān can also be used to form the expression xià xué (to finish school). Shàng bān means ‘to go to work’ and xià bān means ‘to finish work’:

Míngtiān nǐ shàng bān zǎo ma?
Are you going to work early tomorrow?

Nǐ jǐntiān jí diànpí xià bān?
What time do you finish work today?

When adverbs chí (late) and zǎo (early) are used to modify the verbal phrases shàng bān and xià bān (usually to describe the past action), (a) they are placed after shàng bān and xià bān; and (b) if no other expressions such as ‘five minute’, ‘half an hour’, etc. follow chí and zǎo, the past particle le is omitted. For example:

Wǒ jǐntiān shàng bān chí le yǐ kē zhōng.
I was fifteen minutes late for work today.

Wǒmen jǐntiān xià bān hěn zǎo.
We finished work very early today.

18 Use of shénme

Shénme can also be used in front of nouns in questions and negative sentences to mean ‘any’. For example:

Zìyóu shìchǎng yǒu shénme hǎo dōngxi ma?
Is there any good stuff in the market?

Tā méi yǒu shénme péngyou.
He doesn’t have any friends.

19 More on the question word zènme

We saw this word previously in Zènme yàng?, Zènme mài?, etc. Let us see how it is used in asking more complex questions. For example:

Zhōngwén (nǐ) zènme shuō ‘TV’?
How do you say ‘TV’ in Chinese?

Nǐde míngzi (nǐ) zènme xiè?
How do you write your name?

Zhōngguórén zènme guò xīnnián?
How do Chinese people spend the New Year?

Note that the pronoun nǐ in the above first two sentences can be omitted.

20 Omission of yī before measure words

The number yī (one) is usually omitted before measure words that precede nouns. However, if the noun following the measure word is omitted, the number word yī must remain. For example:

Wōmén de dàxué yǒu 4 Fāguórén.
Lit. Our university have [measure word] France person.
There is a French person at our university.
21 Use of bàifēnzhī

In English, the number comes before the expression per cent. In Chinese, the opposite is so: the number comes after bàifēnzhī (per cent). For example:

bài fēn zhī shí
10 per cent

bài fēn zhī líng diǎn wǔ
0.5 per cent ('point' is pronounced diǎn)

bài fēn zhī bǎi
100 per cent (bǎi as in yī bāi)

If phrases with bàifēnzhī occur before nouns, the word de should be used to link them:

Zhè jiān máoyī hán bài fēn zhī bāshí de máo.
This jumper contains 80 per cent wool.

22 Use of duó

The word duó is used after a number to mean 'more than' or 'over'. If there is a measure word in the sentence, duó must be placed before the measure word. For example:

Wǒde Zhōngwén lǎoshi sānshí duó sui.
My Chinese teacher is over thirty.

Tā yǒu èrshí duō ge shīshū hé àyí.
He has more than twenty uncles and aunts.

23 Use of hěn before the verb

When hěn is used before the adjective, it means 'very' (see Lesson 1). Here, it is used before the verb and it means 'very much'. Let us compare the following two sentences:

Tā hěn hǎokàn. She is very good-looking.

24 Verbal phrase chōu kōng

The verb chōu literally means 'to draw/pull'. When it is used together with kōng (lit. 'space/vacancy'), we have the phrase chōu kōng meaning 'to make time'. For example:

Wǒ yídǐng chōu kōng qù kàn nǐ.
I'll definitely make time to go to see you.

Nǐ kěyǐ chōu kōng qù mǎi dōngxi ma?
Could you make time to go shopping?

Another expression which also means 'to make time' is chōu shíjiān. For example:

Nǐ chōu shíjiān gěi wǒ jiāngjiāng nǐde qǐngkuǎng, hào ma?
Will you make some time to tell me about yourself?

25 Difference between gòu and zúgòu de

The word gòu (followed by le in affirmative sentences) is used after nouns to mean 'there is enough . . .' or 'be enough' whereas zúgòu de is used before nouns to mean 'enough'. For example:

A: Qián gòu ma?
B: Gòu le.
A: Is there enough money?
B: It's enough.

Tā yǒu zúgòu de qián.
He has enough money.

Exercises

Exercise 5

Fill in the blanks with qù, shàng, or guàng:

(a) Wǒ jīntiān bù ________ bān.
(b) Nǐ xiāng qù ________ zìyóu shìchāng ma?
(c) Zhū Mǐn xià ge yuè ________ Zhōngguó.
(d) Nǐde érzi ________ xiǎoxué le ma?
Exercise 6

Based on what we have learnt so far, what do you say in the following situations:

(a) You are late for your appointment and you apologize.
(b) You want to assure your friend that there is absolutely no problem if he wants to borrow some money from you.
(c) You do not know how to say the phrase ‘good bargain’ in Chinese and you ask your Chinese teacher.
(d) You have just borrowed some money from your friend, and you want to assure her that you will definitely give it back to her tomorrow.

Exercise 7

Re-arrange the word order of the following so that each set of words becomes a meaningful sentence. Then translate the sentences into English:

(a) hán, zhè tiáo língdài, wūshī, bǎifēnzhī, sì, de
(b) shāngdiàn, wǒ, le, guāng, guāng
(c) gěi le wǒ, Tāng Bīn, ěrshí wǔ qián, jiè
(d) dào, tā, jǐntiān záoshang, chǐ, ěrshí fěnzhōng, le

Exercise 8

Fill in the blanks with gōu or zúgòu de:

(a) Sǐshí kuài ________ ma?
(b) Wǒ méi yǒu ________ shìjiān qù yóuyǒng.
(c) A: Bān jǐn cǎoméi ________ ma?
   B: ________ le.
(d) Tāmen yǒu ________ qián qù Zhōngguó lǚyóu.

Exercise 9

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

1 She doesn’t have any good friends.
2 I'm not working tomorrow. I can find some time to go swimming.
3 I guess he is over fifty.
4 I’m sorry. The dark blue jumpers are sold out. Will black do?
5 It’s a real good bargain. Any more of these?

Characters

Exercise 10

Choose the right character to fill in the blanks and then translate the sentence into English:

(a) 我妈妈明______来看我。
   i) 夫 ii) 大 iii) 天

(b) 他不想______买东西。
   i) 丢 ii) 去 iii) 共

Exercise 11

Convert the following sentence in pinyin into characters:

Wǒ xǐhuan xué Zhōngwén.

Reading/listening comprehension

Below are seven Chinese sentences. Underneath each sentence are three English sentences. Read or listen to (if you have the recording) the Chinese sentence first and tick one English sentence which is closest in meaning to the original Chinese sentence.

A  Duìbùqǐ. Yídài kǎfēi mài guāng le. Hǎinán Dào kǎfēi xíng ma?
(a) There is plenty of Italian coffee.
(b) Coffee from Hainan Island is available.
(c) Coffee is sold out.

B  Míngtiān, wǒ qǐ diǎn shàng bān.
(a) I am not working tomorrow.
(b) I finish work at seven tomorrow.
(c) I start work at seven tomorrow.

C  Xiǎo Fāng jiè gěi le David wǔshí kuài qián.
(a) David borrowed fifty yuan from Xiao Fang.
(b) David lent Xiao Fang fifty yuan.
(c) Xiao Fang has got fifty yuan with her.
9 Zài cānguǎn 在餐馆
At the restaurant

By the end of this lesson, you should be able to:
- name a few Chinese dishes
- order some food and drinks in a restaurant
- use two more measure words
- use guò to describe a past experience
- use rúguò in conditional sentences
- position some adverbs correctly by using de
- write and recognize more characters

Dialogue 1
Diǎn cài ma? 点菜吗? Ready to order?
Li Youde had previously met Daniel and Janet whilst on a business trip in Australia. Now, Daniel and Janet are visiting Taiwan and Li Youde is their host. Today, he is taking them out for dinner. They have just entered a restaurant.

WAITER: Wānshang hǎo. Jī wèi?
Li Yōude: Sān wèi.
WAITER: Qǐng gèn wǒ lái.

(they follow the waiter to a table)

WAITER: Qǐng zuò. Nǐmen xiān xiān hé yǐdiǎn shénme?
Daniel: Wǒ yào yī pǐng Qīngdào pījiǔ.
Li Yōude: Wǒ yě yǐyàng.
WAITER: Xiǎojie xiān xiān hé shénme?
Janet: Yì běi chénzǐ zhī.
WAITER: Hǎo de. Qǐng kān cǎidān.

(the waiter hands out a menu to each of them. After leaving them enough time to decide what they want, the waiter returns)

WAITER: Dìǎn cài ma?
Li Yōude: Dìǎn. Wǒ xiān diàn. Yī ge hǎoxiān tāng hé yī ge niúròu cháo miāntiáo.
WAITER: Nǐn ne, xiǎoshēng?
Daniel: Yī ge suănlà dòufu tāng, yī ge jī dǐng cháo shícài, ěr liàng xiāo lóng bāozi. Wǒ è si le.
WAITER: Xiǎojie?
Janet: Wǒ yào yī xiāo pán zhǎ dàxià, yī ge tángcù yú, hǎi yào yī ge bāi mǐfàn.
WAITER: Hǎo de. Qǐng shǎo děng.

WAITER: wèi
Li Yōude: 三．
WAITER: Qǐng lǐ wǒ lái.
WAITER: Qǐng jǐ shí yǒu chū yī diǎn shénme?
Daniel: Wǒ yào yī fēn Bīngqīng pījiǔ.
Li Yōude: Wǒ yě yǐyàng.
WAITER: Xiǎojie?
Janet: Wǒ yào yī xiāo pán zhǎ dàxià, yī ge tángcù yú, hǎi yào yī ge bāi mǐfàn.
WAITER: Hǎo de. Qǐng shǎo děng.

WAITER: 点菜吗？
Li Yōude: 点。我先点。一个海鲜汤和一个牛肉炒面条。
WAITER: 您呢，先生？

Daniel: 一个酸辣豆腐汤，一个鸡丁炒时菜，二两小龙包子。
WAITER: 我饿死了。
Janet: 我要一小盘炸大虾，一个糖醋鱼，还要一个白米饭。
WAITER: 好的，请稍等。

**Vocabulary**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wèi</td>
<td>[measure word, see Note 1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gēn</td>
<td>to follow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuò</td>
<td>to sit/to sit down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pǐng</td>
<td>[measure word]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pījiǔ</td>
<td>beer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐyàng</td>
<td>to be the same/same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chénzǐ zhī</td>
<td>橙子汁 orange juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cǎidān</td>
<td>菜单 menu [lit. ‘dish list’]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diān cài</td>
<td>菜 to order [+ food]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hǎixiān</td>
<td>海鲜 seafood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāng</td>
<td>汤 soup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niúròu</td>
<td>牛肉 beef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cháo</td>
<td>炒 to stir-fry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miāntiáo</td>
<td>面条 noodles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nín</td>
<td>您 you [the polite form]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nín ne?</td>
<td>您呢？ What about you?/And you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suānlà</td>
<td>酸辣 hot and sour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dòufu</td>
<td>豆腐 tofu [made of soya beans]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jī</td>
<td>鸡 chicken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jī dǐng</td>
<td>鸡丁 diced chicken [lit. ‘chicken dice’]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shícài</td>
<td>时菜 seasonal vegetables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liàng</td>
<td>[unit of weight, see Note 7]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiāo lóng</td>
<td>小笼 small steam-container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bāozi</td>
<td>包子 steamed bread with fillings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>è sì le</td>
<td>被死了 to be starving [lit. ‘hungry died’]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yī xiāo pán</td>
<td>一小盘 a small plate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhá</td>
<td>炸 to deep fry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàxiā</td>
<td>大虾 king prawn [lit. ‘big shrimp’]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tángcù</td>
<td>糖醋 sweet and sour [lit. ‘sugar vinegar’]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yú</td>
<td>鱼 fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bái mǐfàn</td>
<td>白米饭 boiled rice [lit. ‘white rice food’]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǎo děng</td>
<td>稍等 just a second [lit. ‘a while wait’]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notes to Dialogue 1

1 Measure words wèi and píng

Wèi is only used in front of people. It is a polite form of the measure word gè. For example:

Zhōngwén Xi yóu liàng wèi jiǎoshòu.
There are two professors in the Chinese Department.

Waiter: Jì wèi?  
Waiter: How many of you?
Customer: Sì wèi.  
Customer: Four.

Píng is used to indicate bottles and jars. For example:

Wǒ mǎi le sān píng pǐjiǔ.
I bought three bottles of beer.

2 Use of gèn

In English, you say follow me; in Chinese, you must say ‘Follow me walk’, ‘Follow me read’, ‘Follow me come’, etc. depending on the activity. For example:

Qīng gèn wò lái.
Lit. Please follow me come.
Please follow me./This way, please.

Qīng gèn tā dú.
Lit. Please follow him read.
Please follow him./Please read after him.

3 Wǒ yě yìyàng

This phrase can be used if you wish to show that you agree with someone else’s choice or opinion of a kind of drink, a film, etc. It can be broadly translated as ‘Same for me, please’, ‘I think the same’ or ‘Me too’, depending on the context. For example:

A: Wǒ yào yì bèi chénzi zhī.
I’d like a glass of orange juice.

B: Wǒ yě yìyàng.
Same for me, please.

A: Wǒ hěn xihuan Zhōngguó fàn.
I like Chinese food very much.

B: Wǒ yě yìyàng.
Me too.

4 Phrase diàn cài

The phrase diàn cài, literally meaning ‘point dish’, can only be used in restaurant situations. For example:

Waiter: Xiānshēng, diàn cài ma?  
Waiter: Ready to order, sir?
Customer: Diàn.  
Customer: Yes, please.

The verb diàn can be followed by dish names. For example:

A: Nǐ diàn le shénme cài?
What have you ordered?

B: Wǒ diàn le yī ge tángcù yú.
I’ve ordered sweet and sour fish.

Note that the word cài can be omitted from A’s utterance above.

5 Chinese dishes

Chinese dishes usually have imaginative names such as ‘Beef in Bird Nest’, ‘Aunts Climbing the Tree’, which may be named according to the presentation, shape or the way it is cooked. There are fixed expressions for dishes: for example, the Chinese word for ‘sweet’ is tián, but you must say tángcù (lit. ‘sugar vinegar’) for ‘sweet and sour’, and suānlà (lit. ‘sour chilli’) for ‘hot and sour’.

There is also a difference between ‘rice’ and ‘cooked rice’ in Chinese. The word for ‘rice’ is dānǐ. (lit. ‘large rice’). The word mǐfàn (lit. ‘rice food’) is ‘cooked rice’. Then we have bāi mǐfàn (boiled or steamed rice), cháo mǐfàn (fried rice), etc. You can also say bāi fàn or cháo fàn with mǐ omitted.

Xiăo lóng băozì is a real treat. It is steamed bread with a variety of fillings inside (e.g. minced pork, minced beef, shrimps with vegetables, or simply mixed vegetables).

The word níuròu (beef) literally means ‘cattle meat’. The word ròu can be added to some animal names: for example, if we add ròu to zhū (pig) and yáng (sheep), we have zhúròu (pork) and yángròu (lamb).

6 More dish names and vegetarian dishes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>jiăozi</th>
<th>dumpling</th>
<th>sūcān</th>
<th>vegetarian meal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chūnjuān</td>
<td>spring rolls</td>
<td>cháo dōuyā</td>
<td>stir-fried bean-sprouts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dān cháo fàn</td>
<td>egg fried rice</td>
<td>sū jiăozi</td>
<td>vegetarian dumpling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>húntun tāng</td>
<td>won ton soup</td>
<td>sū chūnjuān</td>
<td>vegetarian spring rolls</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7 Unit of weight liǎng

In Lesson 7, the word jīn (half a kilo) was introduced. A smaller unit of measure is liǎng: 1 jīn = 10 liǎng.

8 Common drinks

Below are the names for some common drinks which you may wish to order:

shuǐ water  kuàngquán shuǐ mineral water
chá tea  píngguǒ zhī apple juice
bólúo zhī pineapple juice  yězī zhī coconut juice
kēkōu kēlè Coca Cola  pútáo jiǔ wine

(You can add hóng or bái in front of pútáo jiǔ to make it ‘red wine’ or ‘white wine’.)
mǐ jiǔ rice wine  bái jiǔ spirits (lit. ‘white alcohol’)

9 Verb-adjectives + sǐ le

This is a very useful combination to remember. It can be used whenever you want to exaggerate things. Literally, sǐ le means ‘to have died’ or ‘died’. For example:

Wǒ gāoxìng sǐ le.
Lit. I be happy died.
I’m so happy.

Wǒ è sǐ le.
Lit. I be hungry died.
I’m starving.

10 Verb děng

The expression Qīng shào děng (lit. ‘Please a while wait’) is a more formal way of saying ‘Just a second’. When it is used in restaurant situations, it is almost equivalent to ‘Thank you’ in English. On more casual occasions, you can say Děng yīxià (lit. ‘Wait a second’) or Děngděng. (lit. ‘Wait wait’).

Exercises

Exercise 1

What do you say if you want to order the following?
(a) a glass of orange juice
(b) a bottle of beer
(c) two glasses of white wine
(d) some Chinese tea

Exercise 2

Look at the menu below and say what you would like to order:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CÀIDĀN</th>
<th>JIÀGÉ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TĀNG</td>
<td>¥ 4.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suānliă dōufu táng</td>
<td>¥ 6.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hăixiān táng</td>
<td>¥ 5.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Húntun táng</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZHÉNGCĀN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tángeū zhūrōu</td>
<td>¥ 8.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ji dīng chāo shícài</td>
<td>¥ 10.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nírūōu chāo qǐngjiāo</td>
<td>¥ 11.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhá dǎxiā</td>
<td>¥ 20.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hóng shāo yǔ</td>
<td>¥ 18.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yū tōu shāo dōufu</td>
<td>¥ 16.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chāo shícài</td>
<td>¥ 7.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jìdān chāo mǐfān</td>
<td>¥ 1.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bái mǐfān</td>
<td>¥ 1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xiāo lóng bāozi (1 liǎng)</td>
<td>¥ 1.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jī sī chāo miāntiáo</td>
<td>¥ 3.50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
New words in the menu above:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New word</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jiăgè</td>
<td>jiăgè</td>
<td>price</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jidan</td>
<td>jidan</td>
<td>egg (lit. ‘chicken egg’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hông shāo</td>
<td>hông shāo</td>
<td>stewed in soya sauce (lit. ‘red stew’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhèngcān</td>
<td>zhèngcān</td>
<td>main course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yú tóu</td>
<td>yú tóu</td>
<td>fish head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qìngjiāo</td>
<td>qìngjiāo</td>
<td>green pepper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jī sī</td>
<td>jī sī</td>
<td>shredded chicken</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise 3

Translate the following phrases and sentences into Chinese:

(a) Please sit down.
(b) I'd like to have a look at the menu.
(c) This way, please. (uttered by a waiter in a restaurant)
(d) I'm starving.
(e) Just a second.

Dialogue 2

Nǐ chī guò kǎo yā ma? Have you ever had roast duck?

Gao Xiaohua lives in Taiwan. This is her first visit to mainland China since she left in the early 1940s. She is now visiting some of her school friends in Beijing and Liu Qingqing is one of them. They are discussing which restaurant to go to.

Qīngqīng: Nǐ chī guò Běijīng kǎo yā ma, Xiǎohuá?
Xiǎohuá: Méi yóu.
Qīngqīng: Shì ma? Nà, nǐ yìyīng děi chángcháng. Nǐ jīntiān wānshāng yǒu kòng ma?
Xiǎohuá: Yǒu kòng.
Qīngqīng: Nà, wǒ jǐnwǎn qǐng nǐ chī kǎo yā, zěnmé yáng?
Xiǎohuá: Tài hǎo le. Zànmen qù nà jiā cānguǎn?
Qīngqīng: Běijīng Kǎo Yā Diàn, hǎo bù hǎo?
Xiǎohuá: Tài hǎo le.

(later that evening, Xiaohua and Qingqing are enjoying their meal at the Beijing Roast Duck Restaurant)

Xiǎohuá: Nǐ tài dui le. Zhěn hǎochī.
Qīngqīng: Wǒ zhēn gāoxìng nǐ xīhuan kǎo yā. Duō chī yīxié.

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character(s)</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>guò</td>
<td>guò</td>
<td>over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kǎo</td>
<td>kǎo</td>
<td>roast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yā</td>
<td>yā</td>
<td>duck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shì ma?</td>
<td>Shì ma?</td>
<td>Is that so?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nà</td>
<td>nà</td>
<td>that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>děi</td>
<td>děi</td>
<td>to have got/to must</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cháng</td>
<td>cháng</td>
<td>taste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīntiān wānshāng</td>
<td>jīntiān wānshāng</td>
<td>this evening/tonight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒu kòng</td>
<td>yǒu kòng</td>
<td>have time/to be free</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qǐng</td>
<td>qǐng</td>
<td>invite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cānguǎn</td>
<td>cānguǎn</td>
<td>restaurant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diàn</td>
<td>diàn</td>
<td>restaurant/snack-bar/shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nǐ tài dui le.</td>
<td>Nǐ tài dui le.</td>
<td>You are so right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hǎochī</td>
<td>hǎochī</td>
<td>tasty [lit. ‘good eat’]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duō</td>
<td>duō</td>
<td>more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dì</td>
<td>dì</td>
<td>to pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiāng</td>
<td>jiāng</td>
<td>sauce</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13 Forming time expressions with jìntiān

In English, you say this morning, this afternoon and this evening; whilst in Chinese, you put jìntiān (today) in front of zǎoshāng, xiǎwǔ and wánshāng. Thus we have:

jìntiān zǎoshāng this morning
jìntiān xiǎwǔ this afternoon
jìntiān wánshāng this evening

Note that jìntiān zǎoshāng and jìntiān wánshāng can be shortened to jínzǎo and jínwān.

14 Use of yòu kòng

The word kòng is the same kòng as in chōu kòng (to make time) which appeared in Lesson 8. Yòu kòng means ‘to have time’ or ‘to be free’. To negate yòu kòng, put méi yòu or méi in front of kòng. For example:

A: Nǐ míngtiān wánshāng yòu kòng ma? Will you be free tomorrow evening?
B: Kǒngpà méi kòng. I’m afraid not.

15 Verb qíng

We learnt this word back in Lesson 1, where it meant ‘please’. When qíng is used as a verb, it means ‘to invite’ or ‘to treat someone to something’. If you want to say ‘to invite someone to dinner’, you must say ‘to invite someone to dinner’. For example:

Wǒ xiāng qíng nǐ chī wànshān. I’d like to invite you to dinner.

If it is a past event, put the past indicator le after chī not qíng. For example:

zuòwǎn Lǎo Lǐ qíng wǒ chī le kǎo yā. Lǎo Lǐ treated me to some roast duck last night.

16 Duò chì yǐxiē

This expression is usually used in situations where a host/hostess insists that a guest has some more to eat or a parent asks the child
to eat more. *Duō cói yīxiē* literally means ‘more eat some’. Here the word *duō* is an adverb which describes the verb *cói*. It is put before the verb in sentences which make suggestions or give orders. For example:

*Qing duō mái yīxiē shuǐguǒ.* Please buy some *more* fruit.

*Duō cói yīxiē dāxiá.* Have some *more* prawns.

*Duō hē yīxiē píjiǔ.* Have some *more* beer.

17 Verb *dí*

This verb is usually used together with the preposition *gěi* to mean ‘to pass something to somebody’. For example:

*Nǐ kěyì *dí* gěi wǒ táng ma?* Could you *pass* me the sugar?

*Qing *dí* gěi wǒ bǐng.* Please *pass* me the pancakes.

18 Wǒ gòu le

Grammatically, this is not a correct sentence because it means ‘I’m enough’. However, this has become an accepted expression to mean ‘I’ve got enough’ or ‘It’s enough for me’.

19 Chí báo le

This is another very popular phrase at the dinner table. If you are already full and do not wish to have any more food put into your bowl, you can say one of these:

Wǒ chí báo le.

Chí báo le.

Wǒ báo le.

I’m full./I’ve had enough to eat.

20 Conditional word rúguǒ... dehuá

The word *rúguǒ*, meaning ‘if’, is used either at the very beginning of a sentence or after the subject so that it makes the sentence conditional. For example:

*Rúguǒ nǐ bù rènshí Xiǎo Wáng, wǒ gěi nǐ jiěshào.*

*If you don’t know Xiao Wang, I’ll introduce you to her.*

*Nǐ rúguǒ méi yǒu qián, wǒ kěyì jiè gěi nǐ yīxiē.*

*If you don’t have any money, I can lend you some.*

*Rúguǒ* is often used together with *dehuá* (it has no specific meaning and the first syllable carries no tones) in the first half of a conditional sentence. For example:

*Rúguǒ nǐ méi kòng dehuá, wǒ zìjí qù mái dōngxī.*

*If you don’t have the time, I’ll go shopping myself.*

Sometimes, the emphatic word *jiù* is used in the second half of the sentence. For example:

*Rúguǒ nǐ xiǎng dehuá, jiù zài yào yīxiē.*

*If you want, order some more.*

21 Use of de to link verbs or verb–adjectives with their adverbs

The particle *de*, which is a different *de* from the *de* in *wǒ de* (my/mine), for example, is used to link verbs or verb–adjectives with adverbs if you wish to describe the degree of something. Adverbs such as *kuài* (fast), *duō* (more), *zhǎo* (early), *chí* (late), *háo* (well), etc. are usually used for this purpose. Thus, the pattern is:

verb/verb–adjective + *de* + adverb

For example:

(a) Lào Zhāng chí *de* hěn *duō*.

Lào Zhang eats a lot.

Lit. I eat compared with you fast.

I eat faster than you do.

With verb–adjectives, it does not matter whether the adverb is placed before the verb–adjective or after it. For example:

*Běijīng de dōngtiān lěng *de* hěn.*

*Běijīng de dōngtiān hěn lěng.*

Beijing’s winter is very cold.

Beijing’s winter is very cold.
With verbs, the position of kuài depends on whether it is an order or describes one’s manner. For example:

Qǐng kuài chí. Please eat quickly.
Tā chi de kuài. He eats fast.

To negate sentences (a) and (b) above, place bù after de. For example:

Lǎo Zhāng chí de bù hěn duō. Lao Zhang doesn’t eat much.

Wǒ chí de bù bǐ nǐ kuài. I’m not eating faster than you are.

To negate verb–adjectives plus de, use the normal negation order, i.e. put bù before the verb–adjective and omit both de and the adverb. Alternatively, move the adverb before the verb–adjective and put bù before the adverb. For example:

Bēijīng de dōngtiān bù lěng. Beijing’s winter isn’t cold.
Bēijīng de dōngtiān bù hěn lěng. Beijing’s winter isn’t very cold.

Another thing to remember is that when this structure is used to describe a past event, do not use le nor guò with de. In most situations, the context makes it clear if it was a past event. For example:

Jīntiān zǎoshāng, tā lái de hěn zǎo. She arrived very early this morning.

**Exercises**

**Exercise 4**

Translate the following sentences into Chinese using either guò or le:

(a) Has Alan ever been to China?
(b) Linda went to London yesterday.
(c) He has not had Chinese food before.
(d) A: Have you had your breakfast?
   B: Not yet.

**Exercise 5**

What do you say in the following situations:

(a) You want to let your host know that you have had enough to eat.

(b) You would like to have some more pancakes.
(c) You want one of the people at the table to pass you the sauce.
(e) You stop the waiter and ask for another bottle of beer.
(d) At the dinner table, you want to invite your guests to have some more food.

**Exercise 6**

Complete the following sentences with the phrases provided in the brackets:

(a) _______ (If you have time), zánmen qù chī kǎo yā, hǎo ma?
(b) _______ (you’ve got to) lái kàn wǒmén.
(c) _______ (This morning) wǒ shàng bān chí dào le ěrshí fěnzhōng.
(d) Rúguǒ nǐ è déhuà, _______ (let’s have lunch first), hǎo bù háo?
(e) Xiǎo Zhāng bù xiǎng _______ (invite Lào Wáng).

**Exercise 7**

Translate the following sentences into Chinese using de to link verbs or verb–adjectives with adverbs where appropriate:

(a) The swimming pool opened very early this morning.
(b) Please come early.
(c) I came in very late this morning.
(d) John speaks very quickly.

**Exercise 8**

Negate the following sentences:

(a) Nǐ shuō de duì.
(b) Wǒ mēimeì lái de hěn zǎo.
(c) Yìngguó de xiàtiān ré de hěn.
(d) Tā de fūmǔ tuixiū de hěn zǎo.
(e) Xiǎohuá gāoxìng de hěn.
Characters

1 Learning to write méi yǒu kòng (do not have time)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>méi</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ài</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The left part of méi is called the 'water radical', and it is a very commonly used radical. The character kòng consists of a top part and bottom part. The top part is called the 'roof radical', and it is frequently used.

2 Learning to write the verbs chī (to eat) and hé (to drink)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>chī</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>吃</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>喝</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Both chī and hé share the same 'mouth radical' which we learnt earlier in Lesson 8. This is another frequently used radical. Most words that have something to do with the mouth have the 'mouth radical'.

3 Recognizing two signs:

菜单  餐馆

Cān in cānguǎn (restaurant) is the same cān as appears in cāntīng (dining-room/restaurant) which we learnt in Lesson 4. Cān is a very formal word for 'meal'.

Exercise 9

Convert the following sentences in pinyin into characters:

(a) Wǒ māma shì Zhōngguó rén.
   My mother is Chinese.
(b) Tā méi yǒu kòng.
   She doesn't have time.
(c) A: Nǐ què mǎi dōngxi ma?
   Are you going to go shopping?
   B: Shì de.
   Yes.

Reading comprehension

There is a menu on page 176. First read it and then read the dialogue between the waitress, who speaks a little English, and Charles. Answer the questions in Chinese afterwards:

Dialogue

WAITRESS: Zǎoshāng hǎo, xiānshēng.
CHARLES: Zǎoshāng hǎo.
WAITRESS: Nǐ xiǎng yòng zǎocān ma?
CHARLES: Xiāng.
WAITRESS: Qǐng zuò. Zhè shì zǎocān de cài dān.
CÀIDĀN (zǎocān)
dānǐ xiān
dōushā bāozi
jiān jiā dān
xiān yā dān
*
chénzi zhī
niúnài
kāfei
kǎo miàn báo
xiánròu
mōgū & xǐhóngshì

Questions
A Zhōngwén zěnme shuo ‘milk’?
B Charles chí guò xián yā dān ma?
C Charles hé le niúnái háishi kāfei?
D Tā hái chī le shénme?

Vocabulary
yòng to have [polite expression]
zǎocān formal word for ‘breakfast’
xi fān porridge
dōushā red-bean paste
jiān fried/to fry
xiān yā dān salted duck-egg
niúnái milk
kǎo miàn báo toast [lit. ‘baked bread’]
10 Wèn lù 问路
Asking for directions

By the end of this lesson, you should be able to:

- ask how to get to certain destinations
- understand some expressions regarding directions
- distinguish between kàn, kàn jiàn and kàn de jiàn
- distinguish between the use of kàn bù jiàn and méi yǒu kàn jiàn
- say ordinal numbers (e.g. first, second, etc.)
- write and recognize more characters

Dialogue 1
Cèsuò zài nǎr? 厕所在哪儿？Where's the toilet?

Imagine that you are in a place where Chinese is spoken and you do not know your way around very well. Below are three situations you may find yourself in:

(a) Inside a hotel
You: 请问，厕所在哪儿?
Chinese speaker: 在餐厅的左边。

(b) In the street
You: 请问，附近有公用电话吗?
Chinese speaker: 恐怕没有。你看得见前面红绿灯吗?
You: 看得见。
Chinese speaker: 走到红绿灯，往右拐。我记得那儿有。

(c) In the street
You: 你能告诉我坐几路车去火车站吗?
Chinese speaker: 不用坐车。走路十分钟就到了。
You: 怎么走?
Chinese speaker: 第一个路口往东拐。

Chinese speaker: 从大红绿灯往西走。我在前面下车。
(c) In the street
You: 恐怕没有。你看得见前面红绿灯吗?
Chinese speaker: 看得见。

Chinese speaker: 请问，厕所在哪儿?
You: 走到红绿灯，往右拐。我记得那儿有。

Chinese speaker: 从大红绿灯往西走。我在前面下车。
(c) In the street
You: 恐怕没有。你看得见前面红绿灯吗?
Chinese speaker: 看得见。

Chinese speaker: 请问，厕所在哪儿?
You: 走到红绿灯，往右拐。我记得那儿有。

Chinese speaker: 从大红绿灯往西走。我在前面下车。
(c) In the street
You: 恐怕没有。你看得见前面红绿灯吗?
Chinese speaker: 看得见。

Chinese speaker: 请问，厕所在哪儿?
You: 走到红绿灯，往右拐。我记得那儿有。

Chinese speaker: 从大红绿灯往西走。我在前面下车。
(c) In the street
You: 恐怕没有。你看得见前面红绿灯吗?
Chinese speaker: 看得见。

Chinese speaker: 请问，厕所在哪儿?
You: 走到红绿灯，往右拐。我记得那儿有。

Chinese speaker: 从大红绿灯往西走。我在前面下车。
(c) In the street
You: 恐怕没有。你看得见前面红绿灯吗?
Chinese speaker: 看得见。

Chinese speaker: 请问，厕所在哪儿?
You: 走到红绿灯，往右拐。我记得那儿有。

Chinese speaker: 从大红绿灯往西走。我在前面下车。
(c) In the street
You: 恐怕没有。你看得见前面红绿灯吗?
Chinese speaker: 看得见。

Chinese speaker: 请问，厕所在哪儿?
You: 走到红绿灯，往右拐。我记得那儿有。

Chinese speaker: 从大红绿灯往西走。我在前面下车。
(c) In the street
You: 恐怕没有。你看得见前面红绿灯吗?
Chinese speaker: 看得见。

Chinese speaker: 请问，厕所在哪儿?
You: 走到红绿灯，往右拐。我记得那儿有。

Chinese speaker: 从大红绿灯往西走。我在前面下车。
(c) In the street
You: 恐怕没有。你看得见前面红绿灯吗?
Chinese speaker: 看得见。

Chinese speaker: 请问，厕所在哪儿?
You: 走到红绿灯，往右拐。我记得那儿有。

Chinese speaker: 从大红绿灯往西走。我在前面下车。
(c) In the street
You: 恐怕没有。你看得见前面红绿灯吗?
Chinese speaker: 看得见。

Chinese speaker: 请问，厕所在哪儿?
You: 走到红绿灯，往右拐。我记得那儿有。

Chinese speaker: 从大红绿灯往西走。我在前面下车。
(c) In the street
You: 恐怕没有。你看得见前面红绿灯吗?
Chinese speaker: 看得见。

Chinese speaker: 请问，厕所在哪儿?
You: 走到红绿灯，往右拐。我记得那儿有。

Chinese speaker: 从大红绿灯往西走。我在前面下车。
(c) In the street
You: 恐怕没有。你看得见前面红绿灯吗?
Chinese speaker: 看得见。
Vocabulary

cèsuǒ 厕所 toilet
cuò 左 left
biàn 边 side
fùjin 附近 near by/close by
gōngyòng 公用 public [lit. ‘public use’]
diànhuà 电话 telephone [lit. ‘electric talk’]
kàn jiàn 看见 to see/to have seen
kàn de jiàn 看得见 to be able to see
qiánmian 前面 ahead
hónglù dēng 红绿灯 traffic light [lit. ‘red green light’]
zǒu 走 to walk
dào 到 until/up to
wàng yòu guāi 往右拐 to turn right [lit. ‘towards right turn’]
jìde 记得 to remember
nàr 那儿 there
néng 能 can/could
zuò 坐 to take/to catch [lit. ‘to sit’]
lù 路 route/road
ché 车 car/bus
huǒchē zhàn 火车站 railway station [lit. ‘fire car stop’]
bù yòng 不用 no need/do not need
zǒulù 走路 to walk [lit. ‘walk road’]
jù...le 就...了 [see Note 12]
Zěnme zǒu? 怎么走? How do I get there? How do I get to...?
[lit. ‘How to walk?’]
dìyī 第一 first
lìkǒu 路口 crossroads/junction
dōng 东 east

Notes to Dialogue 1

1 Zuò and yòu

Do you remember the term zuòyòu we learnt in Lesson 2, which means ‘approximately’? On its own, zuò means ‘left’ and yòu right. If you want to say ‘A is on the left/right’, you must use the word biàn and say A zài zuò/yòu biàn. For example:

Nán cèsuǒ zài zuò biàn. Nǚ cèsuǒ zài yòu biàn.
The men’s toilet is on the left and the women’s is on the right.

If you want to say ‘A is on B’s left/right’ or ‘A is to the left/right of B’, you must say A zài B de zuò/yòu biàn. For example:

Yòujú zài cānfēng de yòu biàn.
The post-office is to the right of the dining-room.
(looking at a photograph)
Wǒ mèimei zài wǒde zuò biàn. My sister is on my left.

2 Other direction words

Whilst zuò and yòu in Note 1 above can be used to describe both human beings and objects, dōng, nán, xi, běi (east, south, west, north) can only be used to describe objects. The usage is the same as zuò/yòu. For example:

Bāihuò shāngdiàn zài Běijīng Fàndiàn de dōng biàn.
The department store is to the east of the Beijing Hotel.

The combinations of these direction words are different in order from English. See below:

dōngběi northeast
dōngnán southeast
xīběi northwest
xīnán southwest

3 More on yòu

We learnt yòu (to have) in Lesson 4 in saying, for example, Běijīng Fàndiàn yòu yí ge yóuyòng chí. Yòu can also be used without a
6 Use of jide

The verb jide is used to indicate things that you now remember or have remembered. For example:

Ni jide tā tái tāi de míngzi ma? Do you remember his wife's name?
Wǒ jide nǐ. I remember you.
To negate, use bù in front of the verb. For example:

Wǒ bù jide tā duō de le. I don't remember how old he is.
Note that the verb jide cannot be used to express a notion of future time. For example, it cannot be used to say 'Please remember something' or 'I will remember something'.

7 Position of nà and zhè

Do you remember the two pronouns nà (that) and zhè (this)? Once ér is added to them, we have nàr (there) and zhèr (here), which are always placed either before the verb or after zài (to be at/to be in). For example:

Nàr yǒu yī gé gōngyòng diànhuà. There's a public telephone there.
(Looking at a map)
Wǒde dàxué zài zhèr. My university is here.

8 Difference between hui and něng

In Lesson 2 we learnt the auxiliary verb hui which means 'can' or 'to be able-to'. Hui emphasizes ability whereas něng emphasizes willingness. For example:

Wǒ gè ge bù hui yǒuyòng. My elder brother cannot swim.
Ni něng jiè gěi wǒ yì xiè qián ma? Could you lend me some money?
9 Shortening of 龚ton qiche to che

Anything that has got wheels is a che. Thus we have:

zixingche bicycle (zixing means ‘self-pedalling’)
xiangche car (xiang means ‘small’)
huochche train (huo means ‘fire’)
chuziche taxi (chuzi means ‘on rent’)
machche horse-drawn carriage (ma means ‘horse’)

However, gongton qiche (gongton means ‘public together’ and qiche means ‘vehicle’) is often shortened to che in mainland China. For example:

Ni keyi zuo shi luo che qu Tian’anmen.
You can take Bus No. 10 to go to Tian’anmen.

10 More on the question word ji

This question word has appeared earlier in various questions that have to do with numbers. Ji is also used to ask which number bus to take. For example:

Qing wen, zuo ji lu che qu huochche zhan?
Could you tell me please which number bus to catch to get to the railway station?
Zhe shi ji lu che?
Which number bus is this?

11 Use of bu yong

In Note 12 of Lesson 9, it was mentioned that the negative form of de (to have to) is bu yong. Basically, bu yong means ‘there is no need to’ or ‘do not need’. For example:

Ni bu yong gei wo mai liwu.
You don’t need to buy me any presents.

Bu yong xie. Zanmen shi hao pengyou.
Lit. No need to thank. We are good friends.
Don’t mention it. We’re good friends.

12 Construction ji . . . le

One usage of this construction is to emphasize the verb or verb–adjective which is inserted between ji and le. It is very difficult
to find a direct English equivalent of this construction. Let us look at some examples:

Zoulu shi fenzhong ji du dao le.
Lit. Walk ten minutes get there.
It’s only ten minutes’ walk, and you’ll be there.
Shi kuai qian ji du gou le.
Ten yuan will be enough.

13 Zenne zou?

This is a very common way of asking how to get to somewhere, although literally the phrase means ‘How to walk?’ You can put your desired destination in front of zenne zou. For example:

Huochche zhan zenne zou?
How do I get to the railway station?
You can also place the verb qu (to go) before the destination. For example:

Qu nimende daxue zenne zou?
How do I get to your university?

14 Ordinal numbers (e.g. first, second, etc.)

It is very easy to form ordinal numbers in Chinese. Simply put di in front of a numeral (e.g. yi, er, san, etc.). For example:

di yi first
di er second
di shi yi eleventh
di ershi san twenty-third

If you want to say, for example, ‘the first junction’, the measure word ge needs to be inserted between the ordinal number and the noun. Thus we have di yi ge huakou.

Exercises

Exercise 1

You want to find out the following from a Chinese speaker:
(a) Where the toilet is.
(b) If there is a public telephone nearby.
(c) Where the No. 10 bus is.
(d) How to get to the railway station.
(c) Which number bus to catch to go to the Beijing Hotel.

**Exercise 2**

Look at the picture below and then complete the sentences describing the position of each person in relation to someone else in the picture:

1. Lao Zhang
2. Maria
3. Xiao Fang
4. Linda

**Exercise 3**

Look at the following two pictures and answer the questions (see page 193 for new signs):

I. A plan of a corner of the ground floor of a hotel (facing page)
(a) Cesuō zài nǎr?
(b) Gōngyòng diànhuà zài nǎr?
(c) Cǎntǐng zài nǎr?
Suppose the following two destinations are both within walking distance:

(a) Huǒchē zhàn zěnme zǒu?
(b) Qù Běijīng Fándiàn zěnme zǒu?

Exercise 4

Negate the following sentences and then translate the negated sentences into English:

(a) Tā jīde wǒde móngzi.
(b) Nǐ déi gěi wǒ mǎi fùwù.
(c) Fǔjīn yǒu bǎihuò shàngdiàn.
(d) Wǒ kàn jiàn le huǒchē zhàn.
(e) Wǒ kàn de jiàn hónglù dēng.

Exercise 5

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

1. There is a post-office there.
2. She can speak Chinese.
3. I can’t tell you about him.
4. Turn right at the first junction. You’ll get there in about 15 minutes.

Dialogue 2

Jiè zìxíngcē 借自行车 Borrowing a bike

This dialogue is between Frank, who is teaching English at the Guangzhou Foreign Language Institute, and his friend Feixia.

FRANK: Wǒ kěyì jiè yīxià nǐde zìxíngcē ma?
FEIXIA: Dāngrán kěyì. Nǐ yào qù nàr?
FRANK: Yěxū xīngqūián qù Zhōngshān Dàxué.
FEIXIA: Nǐ zhídào zěnme zǒu ma?
FRANK: Bù zhídào. Dānshì, wǒ xiǎng wǒ néng zhǎo dào.

FRANK: Hǎo zhǔyi. Qǐ chú yìyuè xǔyào duō jiǔ?
FEIXIA: Yī ge bān xiǎoshí zuòyǒu.

FRANK: Wǒ kěyì jiè yīxià nǐde zìxíngcē ma?
FEIXIA: Dāngrán kěyì. Nǐ yào qù nàr?
FRANK: Yěxū xīngqūián qù Zhōngshān Dàxué.
FEIXIA: Nǐ zhídào zěnme zǒu ma?
FRANK: Bù zhídào. Dānshì, wǒ xiǎng wǒ néng zhǎo dào.

FRANK: Yǒu kěyì jiè yīxià nǐde zìxíngcē ma?
FEIXIA: Dāngrán kěyì. Nǐ yào qù nàr?
FRANK: Yěxū xīngqūián qù Zhōngshān Dàxué.
FEIXIA: Nǐ zhídào zěnme zǒu ma?
FRANK: Bù zhídào. Dānshì, wǒ xiǎng wǒ néng zhǎo dào.

Vocabulary

| jiè 借 | to borrow |
| zìxíngcē 自行车 | bicycle |
| yào 要 | to be going/to/will |
| yěxū 也许 | perhaps |
| dàxué 大学 | university |
| dānshì 但是 | but |
| wǒ xiǎng 我想 | I think . . . |
| zhǎo dào 找到 | to succeed in finding something |
| xiǎngxīn 相信 | to believe |
| nǐ zǔhào 你最好 | you’d better |
| chāi 擦 | to check |
| dìtú 地图 | map |
| hǎo zhǔyi 好主意 | good idea |
| qí 骑 | to ride |
| xǔyào 需要 | to require/to need |
| xiǎoshí 小时 | hour |

Notes to Dialogue 2

15 Use of jiè

In Chinese, the word for ‘to borrow’ is the same as the word for ‘to lend’, which we learnt earlier in Lesson 8. The only difference lies in its usage. Let us compare jiè (to borrow) with jiè (to lend):

Wǒ xiǎng jiè yīxià nǐde zìxíngcē.
I’d like to borrow your bike.
Wǒ jiè gěi le Xiǎo Lì wǒde zìxíngchē.
I lent my bike to Xiao Li.

Note that yǐxià here does not have any specific meaning except reducing the abruptness of the tone. Yǐxià usually follows jiè when it means 'to borrow'; and gěi always follows jiè when it means 'to lend'. For example:

Wǒ kěyǐ jiè yǐxià nǐde dītí ma?
Could I borrow your map for a while?

Nǐ kěyǐ jiè gěi wǒ nǐde dītí ma?
Could you lend me your map?

16 Use of yào

In addition to the meaning of 'to want' which we learnt in Lesson 7, yào can also be used in front of verbs to indicate that something, often a planned action, is happening in the near future. For example:

Susan yào qù Zhōngguó liúyóu.
Susan is going to China to travel.

Wǒ fǎnshì yào lái Yingguó.
My parents are coming to England in June.

17 Zhōngshān Dàxué

Zhongshan University (Zhōngshān Dàxué) was named after Sun Yat-sen, the founder of the first Chinese republic, whose given name was Zhōngshān (literally meaning 'middle mountain'). Yat-sen was his other given name.

18 Verb phrase zhǎo dào

When the phrase zhǎo dào is preceded by néng or kěyǐ, it means 'to be able to find'. If you cannot find something, put bù between zhǎo and dào. For example:

A: Nǐ néng zhǎo dào huǒchē zhàn ma?
Can you find the railway station?

B: Zhǎo bù dào.
I can't.

When zhǎo dào is followed by le, it means 'to have found' or 'found', and if you have not or did not find something, put the negation word méi(yǒu) in front of zhǎo dào. For example:

A: Nǐ zhǎo dào nǐde qiánbāo le ma?
Have you found your wallet?

B: Méi yǒu zhǎo dào.
No, I haven't found it.

19 Verb xiǎngxìn

If you want to say 'I don't believe it', you can either say Wǒ bù xiǎngxìn or Wǒ bù xīn. In spoken Chinese, xiǎng is often omitted from xiǎngxìn. For example:

A: Wǒ jǐnián sānshíwǔ suì. A: I'm thirty-five this year.
B: Wǒ bù xīn. B: I don't believe it.

20 Use of qí

When qí is followed by zìxíngchē, it means 'to ride a bike', 'by bike' or 'go cycling'. For example:

Nǐ huì qí zìxíngchē ma?
Can you ride a bike?

Zuótiān, wǒ qí zìxíngchē qù Tiān'ānmén.
I went to Tian'anmen by bike yesterday.

Nǐ xīhuan qí zìxíngchē ma?
Do you like cycling?

21 Use of xūyào

The verb xūyào means 'to require' or 'to need'. It can also be translated as 'It takes . . .' in certain contexts. For example:

Tā xūyào yī jiàn máoyì.
He needs a jumper.

Qí zìxíngchē qù Zhōngshān Dàxué xūyào ěrshí fēnzhōng.
It takes twenty minutes to get to Zhongshan University by bike.
22 Xiǎoshí *as opposed to* diǎn

Xiǎoshí (hour) is used for the duration of time and diǎn is used to tell the time. For example:

A: Cānchǎng jì diǎn kǎimén?
   What time does the restaurant open?

B: Hái yǒu yī ge xiǎoshí.
   Still an hour to go.

Let us compare the use of bàn (half) in combination with diǎn and xiǎoshí:

- yī diǎn bàn  
  half past one
- yī ge bàn xiǎoshí  
  one hour and a half
- bàn ge xiǎoshí  
  half an hour

**Exercises**

**Exercise 6**

What do you say if you want to know how long it takes to:

(a) cycle to Zhongshan University
(b) walk to the railway station
(c) get to Tian’anmen Square by bus?

**Exercise 7**

What does the verb jiē mean in the following sentences? Write ‘borrow’ or ‘lend’:

(a) Wǒ xiāng jiē yīxià nǐde zìxíngchē.
(b) Nǐ kěyí jiē gěi wǒ yīxiè qián ma?
(c) Wǒ bù xiǎng jiē wǒ fùmǔ de qián.
(d) Xiǎo Fāng jiē gěi le Lǎo Wáng wǔshí kuài qián.

**Exercise 8**

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

(a) I don’t believe that you don’t have a bike.
(b) I’m going to Shanghai next Saturday.

(c) Frank didn’t find Zhongshan University.
(d) You’d better check the map.
(e) It takes more than an hour to cycle to my university.
(f) This is a good idea.

**Characters**

**Recognizing three signs**

- 厕所 (cè suǒ)  
  toilet
- 公用电话 (gōng yòng diàn huà)  
  public telephone
- 火车站 (huǒ chē zhàn)  
  railway station

**Exercise 9**

Match the following signs on the left with the English equivalent on the right:

1 餐馆  
   (a) hotel
2 旅游局  
   (b) tourist bureau
3 邮局  
   (c) bank
4 银行  
   (d) post-office
5 饭店  
   (e) shop
6 商店  
   (f) restaurant

**Reading/listening comprehension**

(multiple choice)  

1 Below are five Chinese sentences. Underneath each sentence are three English sentences. Read or listen to (if you have the
11 Mǎi qìché piào hé huǒché piào
买汽车票和火车票

Buying bus and train tickets

By the end of this lesson, you should be able to:
- buy bus and train tickets
- say which train you wish to take
- use more sophisticated phrases to modify nouns by using de
- make more sophisticated comparisons
- write and recognize more characters

Dialogue 1
Yǒu rén mǎi piào ma? 有人买票吗?
Fares, please!

Andrew, a sales manager for a publishing company, is travelling in China. Today, he wants to try to find his way around without a tourist guide. At the moment he is on a bus.

Bus conductor: You rén mǎi piào ma?
Andrew: Yǒu. Wǒ mǎi yì zhǎng qù dōngwǔyuán de piào.
Bus conductor: Zhè liàng chē bù qù dōngwǔyuán.
Andrew: Shénme? Wǒ zuò cuò ché le ma?
Bus conductor: Bìe jí. Nǐ xià yì zhǎn xià chē, huàn shībā lù diànchē.
Andrew: Dùnbùqǐ, wǒ méi tīng qǐng. Qīng mǎn yìdiǎn shūō.
Bus conductor: (repeats slowly) Nǐ xià yì zhǎn xià chē, huàn shībā lù diànchē.
Andrew: Xièxiè. Nà, wǒmǎi yì zhǎng piào. Duōshǎo qiān?
Bus conductor: Yí máo.
Andrew:  Tài xièxié nǐ le.

Bus conductor:  有 人 买 票 吗？
Andrew:  有，我买一张去动物园的票。
Bus conductor:  这辆车不去动物园。
Andrew:  什么？我坐错车了吗？
Bus conductor:  别急，你下一站下车，换二十八路电车。
Andrew:  对不起，我没听清。请慢一点说。
Bus conductor:  你下一站下车，换十八路电车。
Andrew:  谢谢。那，我买一张票，多少钱？
Bus conductor:  一毛。
Passenger:  我刚好也去换十八路。你跟我走吧。
Andrew:  太谢谢你了。

Vocabulary

yǒu rén  有人  anybody/somebody
[lit. 'have people']
píao  票  ticket
zhāng  张  [measure word, see Note 3]
dòngwùyuán  动物园  the zoo
[lit. 'animal park']
liàng  斤  [measure word, see Note 3]
cuò  错  wrongly/to be wrong
bié  别  do not
xià yī zhàn  下一站  next stop
xià chē  下车  to get off
diànchē  电车  tram/streetcar [lit. 'electric vehicle']
méi tíng qìng  没听清  did not hear clearly
màn  慢  slowly/slow/to be slow
gāng hào  刚好  to happen to/by chance/just as well

Notes to Dialogue 1

1 On a Chinese bus
Buses in mainland China always have a conductor who sells tickets and ensures that everyone has one. The bus driver's job is only to drive.

2 Use of Yǒu rén
When Yǒu rén is used in a yes/no question, it means ‘Is there anybody who . . . ?’ or simply ‘Anybody . . . ?’ For example:

Yǒu rén xiǎng hē kāfēi ma?
Is there anybody who'd like to have coffee?

Zhèr, yǒu rén jiào Liu Xià ma?
Anybody called Liu Xia here?

When Yǒu rén is used in affirmative sentences, it means ‘someone/ Somebody’. For example:

Yǒu rén gěi nǐ mái le yì tiáo lǐngdài.
Someone has bought you a tie.

3 Measure words zhāng and liàng
The measure word zhāng is used before nouns such as píao (ticket), báozhǐ (newspaper), zhǐ (sheets), etc. whenever required. For example:

liàng zhāng gōnggōng qíché píao  two bus tickets
yī zhāng huòché píao  one train ticket

The measure word liàng is used before nouns such as gōnggōng qíché (bus), huòché (train), fēijī (plane), zìxíngché (bike), etc. For example:

sān liàng diànché  three trams
yī liàng zìxíngché  one bike
4 Using de to link a verbal phrase with a noun

In English, prepositions such as ‘in’, ‘to’, etc. are used to specify nouns (e.g. a woman in a red jumper; a ticket to London). Also, in English, these modifying phrases or clauses come after the noun. This situation is very different in Chinese. Verbal phrases, not prepositions, are used to specify or modify nouns and they come before nouns. They are linked by de. For example:

Wǒ màì yī zāng qu dòngwùyuán de piào.
Lit. I buy one go to zoo ticket.
A ticket to the zoo, please.

Nà ge chuàn hóng máoyī de rén shì wǒ jiējie.
Lit. That wear red jumper person is my elder sister.
The one in the red jumper is my elder sister.

5 Use of cuò

When cuò is used to mean ‘to be wrong’, it must be followed by le. For example:

Duìbùqǐ, wǒ cuò le.
Sorry, I’m wrong.

Cuò can also be used as an adverb to modify verbs. For instance, in English the sentence I got it wrong can be used to refer to things one has said, seen, heard, etc. However, in Chinese, you must say Wǒ shuō cuò le (lit. ‘I spoke wrong.’), Wǒ kàn cuò le (lit. ‘I saw wrong’), Wǒ tīng cuò le (lit. ‘I heard wrong’), etc. depending on the context. For example:

(A to C): Wǒmen xīngqī qù Shànghǎi.
We are going to Shanghai on Thursday.

(B interrupts): Nǐ shuō cuò le. Shī xīngqīsīn.
You got it wrong. It’s Wednesday.

When a verb takes an object (e.g. ‘to take the bus’ – ‘the bus’ being the object of ‘to take’), cuò is placed after the verb but before the object. Le can be put either after cuò or after the object providing that the object that follows the verb is not a very long phrase. For example:

Zǎogāo, wǒ diān cuò le cài. 
Damn it! I ordered the wrong dish.
object

Wǒ zuò cuò chē le ma?
Have I taken the wrong bus?
object

6 Use of bié

The word bié, meaning ‘do not’, is only used in imperative sentences (e.g. ‘Don’t smoke!’). It is always placed before the verb. For example:

Bié jí. Hái yǒu shíjiān. 
Don’t worry. There’s still time.

Bié guòsù Sāisāi wǒ zāi zhèr. 
Don’t tell Sāisāi that I’m here.

7 Xià ge and xià yì...

In Lesson 3, we learnt the phrase xià ge when it was used in xià ge xīngqī (next week) with yi omitted. The complete form is xià yǐ ge xīngqī. Yǐ is usually omitted when it is followed by the measure word gè. Numbers other than yǐ cannot be omitted. For example:

xià liǎng ge xīngqī next two weeks
xià sān ge yuè next three months

We have also learnt that some nouns require measure words other than gè. In these cases, you must use xià + number + that measure word to mean ‘next’. For example:

yì liàng zìxīngché one bike → xià yì liàng zìxīngché next bike
sān zhāng piào three tickets → xià sān zhāng piào next three tickets

There are a couple of nouns such as zhàn (stop), bù (step), etc., which can be used as measure words. In this case, you must use xià + number + noun to mean ‘next’. For example:

yì zhàn one stop → xià yì zhàn next stop
liǎng bù two steps → xià liǎng bù next two steps

8 Use of gānghǎo

This phrase is always placed before verbs. For example:

Wǒ gānghǎo yào qù huòchē zhàn. Wǒ dài nǐ qù. 
I happen to be going to the railway station. I’ll take you there.

Wǒ wàng le Zhōngwén zěnme shuō ‘toilet’. Gānhǎo nà ge rén huǐ shuō yǐdiǎn Yīngwén.
I forgot how to say ‘toilet’ in Chinese. Just as well that chap could speak a little bit of English.
Exercises

Exercise 1

Use de to form one complete sentence from the pairs of sentences below. Then translate them into English:

Example: Chuan hong maoji (wear red jumper).

Nà ge rén shì wóde gēge.

Change to: Nà ge chuan hong maoji de rén shì wóde gēge.

(a) Qù dōngyúyuán (go to the zoo). Wǒ mái săn zhāng piāo.
(b) Gāng dào (just arrived). Nà ge nánhái shì Lǎo Liū de érzi.
(c) Chángcháng chǐ dào (always be late).
Wáng jīngli bù xīhuǎn náxiě rén (náxiě means ‘those’).

Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks with appropriate measure words:

(a) Tā mài le liàng ______ zhēnsī lingdài.
(b) Yí ______ qù huǒchē zhàn de piāo duō shǎo qián?
(c) Nǐ zuò cuò chē le. Zhè ______ chē bù qù huǒchē zhàn.
(d) Tā mài le wù ______ Qīngdào pǐjù.

Exercise 3

What do you say to yourself when you realize that:

(a) you have taken the wrong bus
(b) you have ordered the wrong dish
(c) you have called someone the wrong name
(d) you have bought the wrong coffee

Exercise 4

You tell your friend not to:

(a) worry
(b) take a bus
(c) tell Lao Wang how old you are
(d) speak English
(e) lend his bike to Liu Hong

Exercise 5

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

(a) Next stop is the zoo.
(b) I didn’t know that you were going away for the next two weeks.
(c) You need to get off at the next stop and change to bus number 12.
(d) Is there anybody called Kan Jiā in this hotel?
(e) Sorry, I didn’t hear it clearly.
(f) Please speak slowly.

Dialogue 2

Mǎi huǒchē piào 买火车票 Buying train tickets ✉️

Chen Xiaojuan, who is an American Chinese born in Taiwan, is travelling in China by herself. She wants to take a train journey from Chendu to Guilin.
Ticket assistant: Bāshíyī cì zěnme yàng? Shǐjū diàn sǐshíwǔ fāché.

Chén xiǎojùan: Shènme shǐhou dào Guīlǐn?

Ticket assistant: Dì èr tiān shìliù diàn ershí fēn dào.

Chén xiǎojùan: Shíjiān bù cuò. Wǒ jiù mài zhè cì chē de piào.

Ticket assistant: Nǐ yào yīngwò hǎishi ruānwò?

Chén xiǎojùan: Wǒ bù dōng.

Ticket assistant: Yīngwò bǐ ruānwò piányi wūshí kuài, dānshí yīngwò méi ruānwò shūfū.

Chén xiǎojùan: Wǒ yào yǐ zhāng yīngwò.

Chén xiǎojùan: 请问，这是售票处吗？

Ticket assistant: 是的。

Chén xiǎojùan: 我想买一张去桂林的火车票。

Ticket assistant: 什么时候走？

Chén xiǎojùan: 下个星期三，就是六月四号。

Ticket assistant: 你打算乘哪次列车？

Chén xiǎojùan: 我不清楚。最好是晚上六点左右。

Ticket assistant: 八十一次怎么样？十九点四十五发车。

Chén xiǎojùan: 什么时候到桂林？

Ticket assistant: 第二天十六点二十分到。

Chén xiǎojùan: 时间不差。我就买这次车的票。

Ticket assistant: 你要硬卧还是软卧？

Chén xiǎojùan: 我不懂。

Ticket assistant: 硬卧比软卧便宜五十块，但是硬卧没软卧舒服。

Chén xiǎojùan: 我要一张硬卧。

Vocabulary

shòupiào chù 售票处 ticket office [lit. ‘sell ticket place’]
Guīlǐn [a city in the southwest of China]
huǒché piào 火车票 train ticket
zǒu 走 to leave
jiù shì 就是 that is
chéng 乘 to take/to catch [train, bus, plane, etc.]
cì 次 number
lièché 列车 train
qīngchu 清楚 to be clear/clearly

Zuǐhǎo 最好 ideally
fāché 发车 to depart/departure
dì èr tiān the following day [lit. ‘the second day’]
bù cuò quite good/quite well [lit. ‘not wrong’]
yīngwò 硬卧 hard-sleeper
ruānwò 软卧 soft-sleeper
dōng 懂 to understand

Notes to Dialogue 2

9 Use of the verb zǒu

The verb zǒu has several meanings. In Dialogue 2, it means ‘to leave’. However, it can also mean ‘to get there’, ‘to walk’, etc. depending on the context. For example:

Nǐ māma shěnme shíhou zǒu?
When is your mother leaving?

Nǐ xiāng zǒulù háishi zuò ché?
Do you want to walk or take the bus?

Qù nǐmède dàxué, zěnme zǒu?
How do you get to your university?

Zǒu dào dì yī ge lùkǒu, wǎng dōng guāi.
Walk to the first junction, then turn east.

10 Use of jiù shì

This phrase is always used to explain things further and sometimes to reinforce a certain piece of information. It can be broadly translated as ‘that is ...’. For example:

A: Nǐ qízi shěnme shíhou dào?
When is your wife arriving?

B: Xià gé xīngqīlǐu, jiù shì sānyuè sān hào.
Next Saturday, that is, 3 March.

Sometimes, there is no need to translate jiù shì into English. For example:

Tiējūn, jiù shì Xiàoméi de jiējié, jiè gěi le wǒ tāde zìxíngchē.
Tiejun, Xiaomei’s elder sister, lent me her bike.
11 Use of cì

All the passenger trains in China are numbered. Cì, meaning 'number', is used between a number and that train in the same way as lù is used between a number and a bus or tram. For example:

jiù cì lièché  no. 9 train  shíbā cì lièché  no. 18 train

12 Difference between huòché and lièché

Huòché is a general term for trains whilst lièché usually refers to a specific train. For example:

Wǒ bù xihuan zuò huòché.
I don't like taking trains.

Shíyí cì lièché shìshí diàn líng wú fāché.
Train no. 11 departs at 14:05.

It is inappropriate rather than wrong to use huòché for a specific train. The term lièché is often shortened to ché. For example:

Shíyí cì ché dào le ma?  Has the number 9 train arrived?
Zhè shí qù Guilín de ché ma?  Is this the train to Guilin?

13 Difference between chéng and zuò

There is no difference in meaning between these two terms. Both chéng and zuò can be followed by road vehicles, planes and ships when the meaning 'to take' or 'to catch' is intended. The only difference is that chéng is more formal than zuò. For example:

(A train conductor says to a customer)
Huànyìng nín chéng ěrshíyí cì lièché.
Welcome to [travel with] no. 21 train.

When the phrase chéng/zuò + means of transportation precedes the verb qù (to go), it means 'to go by train/bus, etc.' For example:

Xiǎojuān zuò huòché qù Guilín.
Xiaojuan is going to Guilin by train.

14 Use of bù cuò

Literally, bù cuò means 'not bad'. However, the Chinese bù cuò actually means 'quite good' or 'quite well'. For example:

Zhè ge fǎndiàn bù cuò.
This hotel is quite good.

A: Nǐ fùmǔ zuìjìn zěnmé yáng?
   How are your parents these days?
B: Bù cuò, xièxiè.
   Quite well, thank you.

15 More on making comparisons

In Lesson 8, we learnt to make simple comparisons. For example, we learnt how to say 'A is older than B', but we did not learn how to say 'A is five years older than B', 'B is not as old as A' or 'B is less expensive than A'. Let us compare these three sentences:

Pattern: A + bǐ + B + adjective

Dōng Mín bǐ Gù Liáng dà.
Dong Min is older than Gu Liang.

Pattern: A + bǐ + B + adjective + specifics

Dōng Mín bǐ Gù Liáng dà wǔ suí.
Dong Min is five years older than Gu Liang.

Pattern: B + méi or méi yǒu + A + adjective

Gù Liáng méi Dōng Mín dà.
Gu Liang is not as old as Dong Min.

Let us see some more examples:

Yíngwò bì ruǎnwò guì wěishì kuài.
Hard-sleepers are fifty yuan more expensive than soft-sleepers.

Xīn Qín bì Mìào Lán kuài yì fēnzhōng.
Xin Qin is one minute faster than Miao Lan.

Yíngwò méi ruǎnwò guì.
Hard-sleepers are less expensive than soft-sleepers.

Jíntiān méi yǒu zuótiān lèng.
Today is not as cold as yesterday.
Exercises

Exercise 6
You want to tell the railway ticket-assistant that you want to buy:
(a) two tickets to Beijing
(b) one ticket to Shanghai on 8 March
(c) three hard-sleepers to Guilin
(d) two tickets for the number 26 train

Exercise 7
Make as many comparative sentences as possible based on the two sentences in each group:
Example: Yingwò piào wūshì wū kuài. Ruánwò piào yì bái kuài.
Yingwò piào bǐ ruánwò piào piányì sishíwǔ kuài.
or
Ruánwò piào bǐ yingwò piào gui sishíwǔ kuài.
or
Yingwò méi yòu ruánwò gui.
(a) Qīngdāo pǐjù yì kuài qī máo yī píng.
Bēijīng pǐjù yì kuài yī máo yī píng.
(b) Xiǎoméi sǎnsǐyí sui.
Andrew sǎnsǐ sui.
(c) Lǎo Wáng juéde Zhōngguó fān hǎochī.
Lǎo Wáng juéde xīcān (‘western food’) bū tài hǎochī.
(d) Bēijīng de xiǎtān hén rè.
Lùndūn (London) de xiǎtān bū tài rè.

Exercise 8
Translate the following sentences into Chinese:
(a) The train arrives in Guilin at 13:05 the following day.
(b) I leave on Friday, that is, 25 March.
(c) My parents are quite well healthwise.
(d) What time does the number 67 train depart?

Characters

Recognizing two signs

买好票看吃人

Reading/listening comprehension

1. Below is a departure timetable for some trains. Use it to answer the following questions in Chinese:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHE CI</th>
<th>MUDIDI</th>
<th>FACHÉ SHIJIAN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Kūnmíng</td>
<td>9:50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Xiămén</td>
<td>20:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>Wūlǔmōqì</td>
<td>17:05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>Lǎnzhōu</td>
<td>7:45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Vocabulary

chē cì | train number
mùdǐ | destination
Questions

A Nà cì chē qù Kūnmíng?
B Liūshijìù cì chē jì diàn fâché?
C Qù Xiàotâng de lièché jì diàn fâché?
D Qù Liānzhôu de chê shìqi diàn fâché ma?
E Liūshijìù cì chê qù nàr?

2 Below are four sentences. Read each sentence first and then decide if the interpretation below is correct or not by writing ‘true’ or ‘false’. If you have the recording, listen to the sentence first, and then decide if the interpretation is ‘true’ or ‘false’:

(a) Wó xiōng mài sān zhāng qù Yǔnnán de huǒchē piào.
   I'd like to buy three train tickets to Yunan.
(b) Wó māmâ bù xiâng zuò wânsâng fâché de huǒchē.
   My mother doesn't like taking trains.
(c) Rûguó mèi yíngwò dehuâ, wǒ jiù mài míngtiān de ruānwò.
   If there aren't any hard-sleepers, I'm not going.
(d) Qìng zuò shì lù chê qù Bēijīng Fândiânn.
   Please take the number 10 bus to get to the Beijing Hotel.

By the end of this lesson, you should be able to:
- ask about the availability of hotel rooms
- describe the kind of room you would like to have
- use ordinal numbers with appropriate measure words
- make some complaints
- recognize more characters

Dialogue 1

Yǒu kòng fângjiān ma? 有空房间吗?
Any vacancies?  

Jonathan has just finished a conference in Beijing, and he would like to stay on for a couple of days in a hotel near the centre of the city. So he has checked out of the conference hotel and goes into a downtown hotel.

JONATHAN: Qìng wên, nîmen yǒu kòng fângjiān ma?
RECEPTIONIST: Yào kàn qîngkuâng. Nǐ yào dànrén fângjiān háishì shuângrén fângjiān?
JONATHAN: Dān jiàn.
RECEPTIONIST: Zhù jì tiān?
JONATHAN: Sān tiān.
RECEPTIONIST: Ràng wǒ châcha. (after checking the computer)
   Zhēn qiāo! Yǒu yì jiān kòng fângjiān.
JONATHAN: Dān jiàn dài wēishēng jiān ma?
RECEPTIONIST: Dàì.
JONATHAN: Duō shào qián yī tiān?
In the context of booking into a hotel, kòng fángjiàn can mean 'vacancy' or 'rooms available'. For example:

Duibi, wǒ men méi yǒu kòng fángjiàn.
Sorry, we don't have any vacancies.

Nǐ zhidào Běijīng Fǎndiàn yǒu kòng fángjiàn ma?
Do you know if there are any rooms available in the Beijing Hotel?

2 Phrase kàn qǐngkuàng

This is a very useful phrase. We actually learnt the term qǐngkuàng in Lesson 5 in sentences such as Gāosù wǒ nǐde qǐngkuàng (Tell me about yourself). The phrase Kàn qǐngkuàng or Yào kàn qǐngkuàng means 'It depends'. For example:

A: Nǐ míngtiān qù yǒuyòng ma?
Are you going swimming tomorrow?

B: Kàn qǐngkuàng.
It depends.

If you want to say 'It depends on something', you must say Yào kàn + something. For example:

A: Nǐ xiǎng mǎi zhēnsi língdài ma?
Do you want to buy some silk ties?

B: Yào kàn jiǎgé.
It depends on the price.

A: Nǐ qí zìxíngchē shàngbān ma?
Do you go to work by bike?

B: Yào kàn tiānqì.
It depends on the weather.

3 Shortening of noun phrases

Some noun phrases or proper nouns sometimes get shortened by omitting certain parts. Unfortunately, there are no rules to follow. Below are a few phrases we have already learnt which can be shortened:

dǎn rén fángjiàn → dǎn jiān single room
shuāng rén fángjiàn → shuāng jiān double room
Běijīng Dàxué → Běi Dà Beijing University
4 Use of dài

In Lesson 7, dài was used as a verb to mean 'to take' or 'to bring'. Here it is also used as a verb but to mean 'to include' or 'to have' (in the sense 'to come with' as opposed to 'to possess'). For example:

Nǐde fángjiān dài wéishēng jiān ma?
Does your room include a bathroom?

Lǐshǐqì cì lièchē dài kōngtīáo ma?
Does the no. 67 train have air-conditioning?

Dài can also be used as a preposition to mean 'with'. It is always placed after the noun phrase. For example:

Shuāng jiān dài wéishēng jiān duōshǎo qián?
How much is it for a double room with bathroom?

Wǒ xīhuan kāfēi dài niúnǎi.
I like coffee with milk.

5 Duō shǎo qián yī tiān?

When you ask about the hotel tariff in English, you say How much is it per night? In Chinese, you say ‘How much is it per day?’ For example:

Dān jiān duō shǎo qián yī tiān?
How much is it per night for a single room?

Běijīng Fǎndiàn de shuāng jiān sān bǎi yuán yī tiān.
Double rooms in the Beijing Hotel cost three hundred yuan per night.

In the west, the price is per person. In mainland China, the price quoted for a double room is usually for two people. However, if you choose to have a double room and you are the only customer, you still have to pay the double room price.

6 Use of ordinal numbers with measure words

In Lesson 10, we learnt how to say ordinal numbers, i.e. dì yī (first), dì èr (second). When ordinal numbers precede nouns that require the measure word ge, you must put ge after the ordinal number if you want to refer to any one of them. For example:

liǎng ge cāntīng  two dining-rooms  dì èr ge  the second one
wǔ ge dàyī fùwù  five university  dì wǔ ge  the fifth one
xuéshēng  students

If the noun used requires a measure word other than ge, you must put that measure word after the ordinal number. For example:

sān liàng  three bikes  →  dì sān liàng  the third bike
zìxíngché  bicycles  →  dì zìxíngché  the third bike
liǎng jiān  two rooms  →  dì èr jiān  the second room
fángjiān  rooms  →  dì fángjiān  the second room
liù cěng  six floors  →  dì liù cěng  the sixth floor

Note that the word cěng is only used to refer to different floors in a building. It cannot be used to mean the ‘floor’ in, for example, ‘wooden floor’.

Nouns such as tiān (day), nián (year), etc., which do not require measure words, must follow the ordinal number. For example:

yī tiān  one day  →  dì yī tiān  the first day
sì nián  four years  →  dì sì nián  the fourth year

Exercises

Exercise 1

Below is the price information in a hotel brochure. Read it first and then answer the questions in Chinese:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>方间种类</th>
<th>价格（每晚）</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dānrén fángjiān (bù dài wéishēng jiān)</td>
<td>¥25.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dānrén fángjiān (dài wéishēng jiān)</td>
<td>¥85.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuāngrén fángjiān (bù dài wéishēng jiān)</td>
<td>¥122.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuāngrén fángjiān (dài wéishēng jiān)</td>
<td>¥185.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

zhǒnglèi  type
měi tiān  each day/everyday

(a) Dān jiān dài wéishēng jiān duōshǎo qián yī tiān?
(b) Shuāng jiān dài wéishēng jiān duōshǎo qián yī tiān?
(c) Shénme fángjiān wūshìwǔ yuán yī tiān?
Exercise 2
You tell the receptionist at a hotel that you would like:
(a) a single room with bathroom
(b) a double room with bathroom
(c) a single room for three nights

Exercise 3
Translate the following sentences into Chinese:
(a) Do you have any rooms available?
(b) My room does not have a telephone.
(c) Your room is on the fourth floor.
(d) The third bike on the left is mine.

Dialogue 2
Diàndēng huái le 电灯坏了 The light is not working

The following morning, Jonathan bumps into the duty manager of the hotel.

Duty Manager: Záoshang hǎo. Nǐn zuòwān shuì de hǎo ma?
Jonathan: Lǎoshí shūō, shuì de bù hǎo.

Duty Manager: Zěnmé huí shì?

Duty Manager: Zhēn bāoqiàn. Wǒ huì chāi zhě jiàn shì.
Jonathan: Xièxiè. Ó, duì le. Wǒde fāngjiān lǐ yǒu ge diàndēng huái le.

Duty Manager: Shì ma? Wǒ yìdīng ràng rén qù xiù. Hái yǒu bǐde wèntī ma?

Duty Manager: 早上好。您昨晚睡得好吗？
Jonathan: 老实说，睡得不好。

Duty Manager: 怎么回事？
Jonathan: 昨天晚上，隔壁房间很吵，吵到半夜两点。

Vocabulary
lǎoshí shuō 事 frankly speaking/to be honest
zhěnme huí shì? 事 what's the matter?
gěi 吵 next door
chāo 吵 to be noisy
bānyè 半夜 early hours of the morning
zhēn bāoqiàn 真抱歉 many apologies
chū 真抱歉 to see to/to handle
zhē jiàn shì 这件事 this matter
jiān 件 [measure word, see Note 10]
duì le 对了 right/by the way
lǐ 里 inside
diàndēng 电灯 light [lit. ‘electric light’]
huái le 坏了 to have broken/does not work
rāng rén 让人 to send for someone
xiū 修 to repair
wèntī 问题 problem
zānshí 暂时 at the moment/temporarily

Notes to Dialogue 2
7 Zěnme huí shì?

This is a very colloquial phrase. The complete phrase should be Zěnme yī huí shì? (lit. ‘How one thing?’ – huí is another measure word for matters). This phrase is usually used if something has gone wrong and you want to find out about it. It means ‘What’s the matter?’, ‘What’s the problem?’ or ‘What happened?’ The word shì, which is a different word from shí (be), is a general term used to refer to abstract things. For example:

Wǒ mínghuá shì.
I’ve got things to do tomorrow.

Shénme shì?
What is it?
8 More on the past tense

So far, we have learnt two different ways to indicate a past event or an event which is related to the past by using le or guo together with some verbs. However, you must not use either of the above two devices in sentences which describe a stable state of affairs in the past as opposed to momentary action. In the former case, the past tense is indicated by time-related phrases such as zuoštian (yesterday), shàng ge xìngqi (last week), etc. In particular, le or guo must not be used in the following four sentence types:

(a) Sentences with static verbs such as shì (to be), yǒu (to have), xiāng (to want), xīhuà (to like), zhīdào (to know), etc. For example:

Liǎng nián qián, tā yǒu yì liàng zìxíngchē.
He had a bike two years ago.

Qù nián, tā shì dàoyóu.
She was a tourist guide last year.

Zuòwàn, wǒ bù xiāng chī fàn.
I didn’t want to eat last night.

(b) Sentences with verb–adjectives or the word zài (to be at/in). For example:

Zuòwàn, gèbi hěn cháo.
Next door was very noisy last night.

Zuótiān, wǒ bābā bù zài jiā.
My father wasn’t at home yesterday.

(c) Sentences with verbal phrases followed by de. For example:

Zuòwàn, wǒ shuì de hěn hào.
I slept very well last night.

(d) Sentences negated with méi or méi yǒu (see Note 17 of Lesson 3)

You may have noticed that verbs used in the above sentences cannot be negated by méi yǒu or méi.

9 Use of dào

Dào (until) can be used after a verbal phrase, verb or verb–adjective to describe the duration of an event. For example:

Wǒ dēng tā dào shí’ěr diàn.
I waited for him until twelve o’clock.

Tāmén cháo dào hěn wán.
They were noisy all night.

Usually, if the verb is a two-syllable word, put dào after the first syllable and omit the second syllable. Let us take kǎimén (to open) as an example:

Cānchū fǎi dào wǎnsháng shí diàn.
The restaurant is open until ten o’clock.

10 Measure word jiàn

This is the same jiàn as in yī jiàn máoyí (one jumper) in Lesson 8, but it is different from the jiān as in yī jiàn fǎngjiān (one room). Let us see how these two measure words differ in the following phrases:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tone</th>
<th>Character</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yī jiàn shì</td>
<td>fourth tone</td>
<td>yī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liàng jiàn máoyí</td>
<td>fourth tone</td>
<td>liàng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sān jiàn fǎngjiān</td>
<td>first tone</td>
<td>sān</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11 Use of Dui le

This is used when the current topic of conversation reminds you of something. It has the same effect as Oh, yes/right in English when used in those circumstances. For example:

A: Xiào Lǐ qǐng wǒ chī wǎnfàn.
Xiao Li has invited me to dinner.

B: Dui le, Wǒ wàng le gǎosu nǐ . . .
Oh, right. I forgot to tell you . . .
Andrew ràng wǒ wèn nǐ dé fūmú hǎo.
Andrew asked me to say hello to your parents.

When rén (person) follows ràng, rén in this context means ‘somebody’. Thus ràng rén can mean ‘to send for somebody’ or ‘to ask someone’. For example:

Wǒ yídǐng ràng rén qù xiū nǐ de dēng.
I’ll definitely send someone to fix your light.

Mù Ying hui ràng rén gěi wǒ mǎi yī zhāng huǒchē piào de.
Mu Ying will ask somebody to buy me a train ticket.

Exercises

Exercise 4

Which is the odd word out in each group below?

(a) hē kāfēi chī kǎo yā chī zǎocān diàndēng
(b) chūlí dān jiǎn shuāng jiān wěishēng jiān
(c) Yīngguórén Zhōngguórén Měiguórén fǎndiàn
(d) Wéishēnme? Zěnmé hū shí? Shénme shíhou?

Exercise 5

Pair off the verbs on the left with nouns on the right:

(a) xiū  1 zhè jiān shì
(b) chūlí  2 líwù
(c) yǒu  3 diàndēng
(d) mǎi  4 gōnggōng qíchē
(e) kān  5 kǒng fāngjiān
(f) děng  6 pénghyóu

Exercise 6

You complain to the duty manager in your hotel that:

(a) the light in your room is not working
(b) people next door are very noisy
(c) your room is too cold
Exercise 7

Translate the following into Chinese:

(a) Many apologies.
(b) Frankly speaking, ...
(c) Did you sleep well?
(d) It depends.
(e) Sifang asked me to tell you that she is leaving next Thursday.
(f) There is no money inside my wallet.
(g) A: Any other problems?  
    B: Not for the moment.

Exercise 8

Describe the following in the past tense:

(a) your room’s temperature yesterday
(b) you were not in a going-out mood last night
(c) your neighbour being noisy last night
(d) the room you had did not have a bathroom

Reading comprehension

There are a few odd things in the following dialogue. Pick out the strange words or phrases. Then you need to decide whether to cross them out or to replace them with more suitable words or phrases.

Emily Brown has walked into a hotel in Taiwan. She wants to find out if there are any rooms available

RECEPTIONIST: Nǐ hǎo.
EMILY: Xièxiè. Nǐmen yǒu kòng fāngjiān ma?
RECEPTIONIST: Yào kàn qīngkuàng. Nǐ yào wèishēng jiān háishì shuāng jiān?
EMILY: Yào dān jiǎn. Dān jiǎn dái yǒuyòng chí ma?
RECEPTIONIST: Dāngrán dài. Nǐ dāsuàn zhǔ jī tiān?
EMILY: Liáng ge tiān.
RECEPTIONIST: Ràng nǐ chácha. Nǐ kòng fāngjiān.
EMILY: Duō shào qián yī tiān?
RECEPTIONIST: Yī bāi bāshí yuán. Xīng ma?
EMILY: Xīng. Wǒ yào le.

Dialogue 1

Welcome Hello

Alan is doing his doctorate in Buddhism. He is now in Beijing to do some research. Alan is going to call his old friend Li Man, whom he met in England two years ago

ALAN: Wēi, qǐng zhāo yǐxiá Lǐ Mànr.
LÌ MÀN: Wǒ jiù shì. Nǐ shì shéi’ā?
LÌ MÀN: Zhēn de! Nǐ shì shénme shìfù lái de? Wǒ zěnme bù zhídào?
ALAN: Shàng ge xíngqíng lái de. Shì lǐnbì juédìng.
LÌ MÀN: Wǒ tài jiùdòng le. Nǐ shénme shìfù lái kàn wǒ?
ALAN: Shénme shìfù dōu xíng. Nǐ juédìng.
LÌ MÀN: Jìntiān wǎnshàng xíng ma?
2 Some telephone expressions

If you want to speak to someone, you can say one of the following:

**Qing zhǎo yīxià Lǐ Mán?**
*Lit.* Please look for Lǐ Mán?
Could you get Lǐ Mán please?

Note that the expression yīxià has the same effect, i.e. mitigating the abruptness, as it had in Lesson 3.

**Qīng wèn, Lǐ Mán zài ma?** Is Lǐ Mán around please?
If you happen to be the one who answers the telephone and speak first, you can say one of the following:

**Qīng wèn, nǐ zhāo shéi?**
*Lit.* Please ask, you look for who?
Whom do you want to speak to, please?

**Wèi, nǐ shì nǎlǐ?**
*Lit.* Hello, you are whereabouts? Hello, who is calling?

3 Use of ... cóng ... lái ...

In English, prepositional phrases such as *from England* come after the verb. In Chinese, they occur before the verb. For example:

**Wáng xiǎojie cóng Xiāng Gāng lái.**
*Lit.* Wang Miss from Hong Kong come.
Miss Wang comes from Hong Kong.

Suppose you do not know where Miss Wang comes from. The unknown information is ‘Hong Kong’. Thus, the question should be:

**Wáng xiǎojie cóng nǎr lái?**
*Lit.* Wang Miss from where come?
Where does Miss Wang come from?

4 More on the link word de

In the dialogue, Alan explains who he is by saying **Cóng Yīngguó lái de Alan** (The Alan from Britain). The word de links the verbal
phrase with the noun (see Note 4 in Lesson 11). The complete sentence should be:

Wǒ shì công Yingguó lái de Alan.
I am the Alan from Britain.

Now you can see that the above sentence can be taken apart into two simple sentences:

(a) Wǒ shì Alan.
(b) Wǒ công Yingguó lái.

5 Construction shì ... de

This construction has many usages. Let us look at two of them here. First, it is used in interrogative sentences which ask about the time, the place or manner of an action that happened in the past. The word shì is placed before the phrase that is being emphasized and de comes either at the end of the sentence or after the verb. For example:

Ni shì shénme shìhou lái Bèijīng de?
When did you arrive in Beijing?

Ni shì shénme shìhou lái de Bèijīng?
Ni shì zěnme lái de?
How did you get here?

Without shì ... de, the above first two sentences become:

Ni shénme shìhou lái Bèijīng?
When are you coming to Beijing?

And the last sentence becomes Ni zěnme lái?, which means ‘How do you get here?’ or ‘How are you going to get here?’

Second, the construction is used in positive sentences that emphasize the time or manner of a past action. For example:

Wǒ shì bā bā nián kǎishǐ xué Zhòngwén de.
I started to learn Chinese in eighty-eight.

Wǒ shì qì zìxíngché lái de.
I came by bike.

Note that shì is often omitted in the above two cases. Thus we have:

Ta jǐ diànyì xià bān de?
What time did he leave work?

Wǒ zuò gōnggòng qíchè lái de.
I came by bus.

Let us compare the use of le and shì ... de in describing a past action:

Tā zuòtiān lái le.
She turned up yesterday.
Tā shì zuòtiān lái de.
She arrived yesterday.

Tā zuòtiān lái le is merely a statement about a past event (i.e. to confirm that something happened yesterday), whilst Tā shì zuòtiān lái de emphasizes the time ‘yesterday’ as opposed to any other time.

6 Use of shì at the beginning of sentences

You may have noticed that the pronoun ‘it’ is seldom used in Chinese. Thus, the structure ‘It is/was . . . ’ is sometimes replaced by Zhè shì . . . (This is/was . . .). For example:

Zhè shì linshí juédìng ma? Was it a last-minute decision?

The pronoun zhè is often omitted. So shì occurs at the beginning of a sentence:

Shì linshí juédìng. It was a last-minute decision.
Shì Wáng Fāng ma? Is that Wang Fang?

7 More on question words used in statements

Certain question words, when used in statements, especially in conjunction with the emphatic word dōu, function as indefinite pronouns. Note how the meaning changes accordingly:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word item</th>
<th>In questions</th>
<th>In statements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shénme shìhou</td>
<td>whenever / at any time</td>
<td>whenever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nár</td>
<td>wherever</td>
<td>wherever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zěnme</td>
<td>by whatever means</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the moment, let us concentrate on how to use shénme shìhou in conjunction with dōu, which can be placed after shénme shìhou. For example:

Shènme shìhou dōu xíng.
Lit. Whenever be fine.
Whenever you like.
10 Use of bù hào + verb

As you know, bù hào means 'not good'. However, when you have the pattern 'something + bù hào + verb', it means 'It is not easy to do something'. For example:

Huǒchē zhàn bù hào zhǎo.
verb
Lit. Railway station not easy find.
It's not easy to find the railway station.

Zhōngwén bù hào xué.
verb
Lit. Chinese not easy learn.
It's not easy to learn Chinese.

11 Use of jiē

Jiē means 'to collect' or 'to meet', usually, somebody. For example:

Jīntiān wānshāng bù diànbān, wǒ yào qù huǒchē zhàn jiē wǒ māmā.
I'm going to go to the station to meet my mother at half past eight tonight.

Nǐ xiǎo wǒ qù jiē nǐ ma?
Do you need me to go and collect you?

Exercises

Exercise 1

Complete the following telephone dialogues in as many ways as you can think of:

(a) A: _______?
B: Wǒ jiù shì Lǐ Mān.

(b) A: Nǐ shì Běijīng Dàxué Zhōngwén Xī ma?
B: _______?
A: Qǐng zhào yīxià Hú Xīnháng.

(c) A: _______?
B: Dùibùqǐ. Jīnèr bù zài.

(d) A: _______?
B: Wǒ shì cóng Yīngguó lái de Alan.
Exercise 2

Combine the two sentences in each group to make them into one sentence by using de:


(a) Sīfāng shì Zhōngguó rén. Sīfāng cóng Xīnjiāpō lái.
(b) Linda shì dà xuéshēng. Linda xué Zhōngwén.
(c) Wǒde Zhōngwén láoshi shì Zhōngguó rén. Tā cóng Zhōngguó lái. (dài lù means ‘mainland China’)

Exercise 3

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

(a) When did David leave?
(b) I came to work by bike this morning.
(c) Whenever you like. You decide.
(d) He does not like to take a bus, no matter when.
(e) Could you come to collect me?
(f) What time and where exactly shall we meet?

Exercise 4

How do you ask Xiao Li the following in Chinese:

(a) What time did you leave work yesterday?
(b) How did you get to work yesterday?
(c) Was it last night that your younger sister arrived?
(d) When did your younger sister start learning English?

Exercise 5

Make up as many sentences as you can using bù hǎo to mean ‘It is not easy to ...’ and write the English translation after each sentence.
Vocabulary

yòng  to use
wán  [see Note 12]
láobān  boss
dà diànhuà  to make telephone calls/to telephone
bànghóngshì  office
hàomá  number
míshū  secretary
fēnji  extension
Nà yí wèi?  Who is calling?
jí shì  urgent matter
tóng  with/and
shāngliàng  to discuss/to consult
tīng hǎo  to listen carefully [lit. 'listen well']
yī  one

Notes to Dialogue 2

12 Use of wán after the verb

When you put wán after a verb, it indicates that the action is completed. It is similar to the English phrase to have finished with/doing something. Whenever wán is used after a verb, le must be placed after whatever has been finished. For example:

Nǐ chī wán wānfàn le ma?
Lit. You eat finish supper [question word]?
Have you finished having your supper?

Wǒ yòng wán wèishēng jiàn le. Nǐ qù yòng ba.
Lit. I use finish bathroom. You go use please.
I've finished with the bathroom. Do go and use it.

13 More on the preposition gěi

A phrase beginning with gěi ... is always placed before the verbal phrase (see Lessons 5 and 8). Thus, if you want to say ‘to telephone somebody’ or ‘to make a phone call to somebody’, you say gěi + somebody + dà diànhuà. For example:

Bié wàng le gěi nǐ māma dà diànhuà.
Don't forget to phone your mum.

Míngtiān wǒ yídīng gěi nǐ dà diànhuà.
I'll definitely give you a call tomorrow.

If you want to mention the number of phone calls made or to be made, put the numerals together with the measure word gě before diànhuà. For example:

Zuótiān wǒ gěi zànmen láobān dà le liǎng gě diànhuà.
Yesterday, I made two phone calls to our boss.

14 More on the omission of de

The word de, which indicates the ownership relationship, is usually omitted before jiā (home/family). For example:

Nǐ jiā bù hǎo zhāo.
It's not easy to find your home.

Wǒ fāmù jiā zài Xiāng Gāng.
My parents' home is in Hong Kong.

However, it is not wrong to use de. For example, it is perfectly right to say Nǐ de jiā bù hǎo zhāo. But, de must be kept before diànhuà hàomá (telephone number). The reason is that the concept of jiā is associated with people whilst diànhuà hàomá is just an object (see Note 3 in Lesson 5). For example:

Wǒ de diànhuà huài le.
My telephone has been out of order.

Nǐ jiā de diànhuà hàomá shì shénmé?
What is your home telephone number?

15 More on the measure word wèi

We learnt this measure word in Lesson 9. The question Nǎ yī wèi? (lit. 'Which one?') is actually a polite way of asking 'Who is it?' on the telephone. For example:

Wěi, nǎ yí wèi?  Hello. Who is it, please?

It is also appropriate to ask Nǐ shì nǎ yí wèi? (lit. 'You are which one?').
16 *Preposition* tóng

You may have noticed by now that prepositional phrases (e.g. Note 13 above) appear before verbal phrases. Tóng, meaning ‘with’ or ‘and’, is a preposition. Thus tóng + somebody is a prepositional phrase. This phrase must be placed before the verbal phrase. For example:

Wǒ xiǎng tóng nǐ de mèimei shāngliang yǐ jiān shì.
Lit. I want with your younger sister discuss one matter.
I’d like to discuss something with your younger sister.

Nǐ xiǎng tóng wǒ qu yóuyǒng ma?
Lit. You want with me go swim [question word]?
Would you like to go swimming with me?

Note that tóng and hé (and/with) are interchangeable.

17 *Qīng tīng hǎo*

Literally, this phrase means ‘Please listen well’. It is like a sort of warning before you pass on a piece of important information on the telephone. It is similar in meaning to the English phrase ‘Here it is’ or ‘Ready?’ For example:

**A:** Qīng gāosu wǒ Xiǎo Lì de diànhuà hǎomá?
Please tell me Xiao Li’s telephone number?

**B:** Qīng tīng hǎo. Bā-sì-líng-wǔ-lí-sān-ér-yāo.
Here it is: eight-four-zero-five-six-one.

18 *Use of the number* yāo

Yāo is a substitute for yī (one). Yāo is used when the number ‘one’ occurs in telephone numbers, room numbers, bus and train numbers, etc. The reason is that the pronunciation of yī is likely to be mixed up with qī (seven) when a series of numbers is uttered. For example, yāo is used in the following:

yāo-líng-qí fāngjiān
room 107

yāo-yī sān là diànhè
tram no. 113

Wǒ jiā de diànhuà hàomá shì qī-qí-líng-wǔ-bā-yāo.
My home telephone number is 770587.

---

**Exercises**

**Exercise 6**

Decide which de (if any) can be omitted in the following sentences. Rewrite the sentence if a de can be omitted:

(a) Wǒ de jiējie shì dàoyóu.
(b) Wǒmen de jīngli dé bǎngōngshì zài ér cèng.
(c) Wǒ de diànhuà huái le.
(d) Tāde fùmǔde jiā hén piàoliàng.
(e) Wáng Píng shì cóng Běijīng lái de lǎoshī.

**Exercise 7**

Fill in the blanks using the prepositions tóng or gēi:

(a) Tā méi _____ tāde nǚ péngyou máihuí wù.
(b) Qīng _____ wǒ jiēshào yīxià nǐde tāitai.
(c) Wǒ méi yǒu kòng _____ nǐ qù yóuyǒng.
(d) Qīng yǒuqīng _____ wǒ dá diànhuà.
(e) Xiǎo Lǐ xiǎng _____ Lǐ jīnglí shāngliang yǐ jiān shì.

**Exercise 8**

Rewrite the following sentences using wán. Then translate the rewritten sentences into English:

(a) Nǐ chī wàn fàn le mà?
(b) Tā yòng diànhuà le.
(c) Tā diàn cài le.
(d) Xiǎo Lǐ xiū diànhè le.

**Exercise 9**

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

(a) It is very expensive to make phone calls in England.
(b) What is your telephone number?
(c) Your father telephoned you last night.
(d) Is there a telephone at your home?
Exercise 10

Re-arrange the words in each group below so that they make meaningful sentences and then translate them into English:

(a) gōi làobǎn, wàng le, David, dǎ diànhuà
(b) diànhuà, kěyì, wǒ, hàomǎ, nǐde, nǐ, gāosù, ma [question word]
(c) tā, bàngōngshì, jīntiān, zài, bù

Characters

Exercise 11

Fill in the blank with the right character, and then translate the sentence into English:

(a) 昨天我去____朋友了。
   i) 着 ii) 看 iii) 睡

(b) 我____北京住了十年。
   i) 在 ii) 左 iii) 存

(c) 我弟弟____说日文。
   i) 舍 ii) 会 iii) 去

Exercise 12

Read the following dialogue in characters and then answer the questions in English:

A: 喂，请问李老师在家吗？我是他的学生张文。
B: 对不起，他不在家。他去银行了。
A: 他什么时候回来？
B: 六点左右。

A: 那，我六点后再打电话。
B: 好的，再见。

Question 1: Who is phoning whom?
Question 2: Where is Mr. (Teacher) Li?
Question 3: What time will he be back?

Reading/listening comprehension ☑

Read the conversation below, and then answer the questions in Chinese. If you have the recording, listen to the conversation first, and then answer the questions in Chinese.

The following telephone conversation is between two Chinese speakers:

A: Qǐng wèn, Wáng Yū zài ma?
B: Dùnbùqǐ, tā bù zài. Qǐng wèn, nǐ shì nǎ yī wèi?
A: Wǒ shì Wáng Yū de māmā.
B: Nǐ hǎo. Wǒ shì Xiǎo Liú.
A: Nǐ hǎo, Xiǎo Liú. Wáng Yū jīntiān shàng bān ma?
B: Shàng bān. Tā qù chǐ wūfán le. Yì diǎn bān zuòyòu huílái.
A: Qǐng nǐ gāosù tā, wǒ zuò shìlǐ hì chéng míngtiān wǎnshāng liǔ diăn shí fēn dào Shànghǎi. Tīng qǐng le ma?
B: Tīng qǐng le. Nǐ xiūyào tā qù huǒchē zhàn jié nǐn ma?
A: Tāi xūyào le.
B: Wǒ yǐdǐng gāosù tā.
A: Duō xiè.

Questions

A: Wáng Yū zài bàngōngshì ma?
B: Shéi gěi Wáng Yū dǎ diànhuà le?
C: Wáng Yū de māmā shénme shíhou dào Shànghǎi?
D: Wáng Yū de māmā chéng jì cì lièché dào Shànghǎi?
E: Wáng Yū de māmá xiǎng yào tāde érzi qù jié tā ma?
14 Shèjiāo 社交
Socializing

By the end of this lesson, you will be able to:
- express the number of times you have done certain things
- describe a past event in a more sophisticated manner
- differentiate between the verbs lái/qu and the directional words lái/qu
- ask a question requiring a yes or no answer and indicate it is your guess by using le
- use le to indicate that a new situation has arisen and is still happening
- negate sentences with the adverb yě
- recognize some city names and write more characters

Dialogue 1
Xiàyǔ le 下雨了 It's raining

Patrick is American and his wife, Meifang, is Taiwan Chinese. They are currently visiting Meifang's family in Taipei. Today, they have been invited to a barbecue party. At the moment, Patrick is chatting with a Chinese woman called Yulan.

YÚLÁN: Zhè shì nǐ di yī cì lái Táiwānrén ma?
PÁTRICK: Bù shì. Wǒ jī hū měi nián dòu lái Táiwān. Qù nián, wǒ lái le liǎng cì.
YÚLÁN: Zhēn de? Wēishénme?
PÁTRICK: Dì yī cì, wǒmen lái cānjià wǒ tāitai de méimeì de hūnli. Dì èr cì, lái guò chūnjié.

YÚLÁN: Zhèmèi shuō, nǐ tāitai shì Táiwānrén le?
PÁTRICK: Shì a.
YÚLÁN: Nǐmen shì zhěme rènshī de?
PÁTRICK: Shuō lái hùa cháng. Shì nián qián, tā qù Meiguó shàng dàxué. Wǒmen shì tóngxié. Yǒu yī tiān...

YÚLÁN: Zhè shì nǐ yī cì lái Táiwān ma?
PÁTRICK: Bù shì. Wǒ jī hū měi nián lái Táiwān. Qù nián, wǒ lái le liǎng cì.
YÚLÁN: Zhēn de? Wēishénme?
PÁTRICK: Dì yī cì, wǒmen lái chānjià wǒ tāitai de méimeì de hūnli. Dì èr cì, lái guò chūnjié.

YÚLÁN: Zhèmèi shuō, nǐ tāitai shì Táiwānrén le?
PÁTRICK: Shì a.
YÚLÁN: Nǐmen shì zhěme rènshī de?
PÁTRICK: Dì yī cì, wǒmen lái chānjià wǒ tāitai de méimeì de hūnli. Dì èr cì, lái guò chūnjié.

Vocabulary

dì yī cì 第一次 the first time/for the first time
jī hū 几乎 almost
měi 每 every
qù nián 去年 last year
cānjià 参加 to attend/to take part
hūnli 婚礼 wedding
guò 过 to celebrate/to spend
chūnjié 春节 Chinese New Year [lit. ‘spring festival’]
shuō lài hùa cháng 说来话长 it’s a long story [lit. ‘speak talk long’]
qù 前 ago/before
cānjià 同学 classmate
làngmàn 浪漫 to be romantic/romantic
yǒu yī tiān 有一天... one day ... [lit. ‘have one day’]
xì yǔ 哎哟 to woop/whoops!
jìn qu 进去 to go in/to go into
tán 谈 to talk/to chat
Notes to Dialogue 1

1 Use of dì...cì

Simply add a number between dì and cì to form expressions such as dì yì cì (the first time/for the first time), dì èr cì (the second time/for the second time), etc. This phrase is always placed before the verb it modifies or at the beginning of the sentence. For example:

Zhè shì wǒ dì èr cì qù Méiguó.

verb
Lit. This is the second time I go to America.
It will be the second time that I go to America.

Dì yì cì, wǒ bù zhídào wǒ yìnggǎi gàn shénme.
Lit. The first time, I didn’t know what I should do.
The first time, I didn’t know what I should do.

2 Use of cì

If you want to say ‘once’, ‘twice’, ‘three times’, etc., add cì to the numeral. Thus we have yì cì, liǎng cì, sān cì, etc. These phrases must be placed after the verb. For example:

Méi ge xíngqì, wǒ qí yì cì xīngqìchē.
verb object
I ride my bike once every week.

If these phrases are used in the past tense, i.e. when le or guò is used, they can be placed either after le or guò or at the end of the sentence. For example:

David qù guò sān cì Zhōngguó. David qù guò Zhōngguó sān cì.
David has been to China three times.

In certain fixed verbal phrases such as dā diànhuà, you must put yì cì or liǎng cì after the verb or the particle le. For example:

Zuótiān wǒ gěi wǒ māmá dà le liǎng cì diànhuà.
I phoned my mother twice yesterday.

If you want to turn the above sentence into a question, use the question word jǐ:

Zuótiān nǐ gěi nǐ māmá dà le jǐ cì diànhuà?
How many times did you phone your mum yesterday?

3 Use of qù in qù nián

Literally, qù nián means ‘gone year’. Qù nián is a fixed expression for ‘last year’. You can not use qù with yuè (month) or xīngqī (week). When qù is used before a noun, it means ‘to have gone’ or ‘to have passed’.

4 More on verbs

As prepositions (e.g. ‘at’, ‘in’, ‘on’) are not extensively used in Chinese, one of the ways to articulate an idea expressed in English with a preposition is by using verbs. For example:

Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yī zhǎng qù Běijīng de huòché piào.
Lit. I want buy one go Běijīng train ticket.
I’d like to buy a train ticket to Běijīng.

Dì èr cì, wǒmen lái guò chūnjié.
Lit. The second time, we come spend Spring Festival.
The second time, we came for the Spring Festival.

5 le indicating a guess

If you want to ask a question requiring a yes or no answer and at the same time indicate that it is your guess, put le at the end of a sentence instead of ma and use the rising tone. Phrases such as nàme (so/in that case), zhème shūō (in that case), etc. are often used in this case. For example:

Nàme, nǐ bù xiǎng qù le? ( )
So, you don’t wish to go?
Zhème shūō, nǐ jiù shì Wáng jīnglǐ le? ( )
In that case, you must be Mr Wang the manager?

6 Use of méi

When méi (every) is used before a noun which requires a measure word, the measure word must be used after méi and before the noun. For example:
If you are in one place and talk about some other place you have been to, use the verb qù:

Wǒ qù guò sān cì Shānhǎi.
I've been to Shanghai three times.

9 More on the omission of de

The sentence sounds awkward if there are more than two occurrences of de – try to omit those which can be omitted. For example, the de in wǒde can be omitted from wǒde tài tài de méi mei de hūn lǐ. So we have wǒ tài tài de méi mei de hūn lǐ (my wife's younger sister's wedding).

10 Use of qián

The word qián (ago/before) is always placed after a time expression, a verbal clause or a sentence. For example:

Tā shì liǎng nián qián lái Yīngguó de.
It was two years ago that he came to Britain.

Shànghǎi dà xué qián, Liú Xiǎohóng shì dàoyóu.
Before going to university, Liu Xiaohong was a tourist guide.

Wǒ lái Yīngguó qián, méi chī guō xi ěr càn.
I hadn't had western food before I came to Britain.

11 le used to indicate a change of state

When le is used in sentences that describe a present event, it indicates that a new situation has appeared. It also implies that something is happening gradually which was not the case previously. It
is usually put after a verb–adjective or at the end of a sentence. It
can be translated by the ‘to be + doing’ pattern. For example:

Wǒ lǎo le.  I’m getting old. (i.e. I was not old before)
Xiàyǔ le.  It’s raining. (i.e. previously it was not)

12 jin qu versus jin lai

Literally, jin qu means ‘enter go’ and jin lai means ‘enter come’.
If you are outside a house and wanting to go in, use jin qu (to go
in/to go into). If you are inside a house and asking someone else
to come in, use jin lai (to come in/to come inside). Here again, qu
and lai are directional words, as we saw in Note 16 of Lesson 7,
and they usually become toneless. For example:

Xiàyǔ le. Zánmén jin qu tán, háo ma?
It’s raining. Shall we go inside to talk?
Wài miàn hén lěng. Nímen wèishénme bù jin lai?
It’s cold outside. Why don’t you come in?

You can negate jin qu or jin lai with bù. When bù is placed before
jin qu or jin lai, it means ‘do not go in’ or ‘do not come in’. When
bù is placed in between jin and qu or lai, it means ‘cannot go in’
or ‘cannot come in’, in which case qu and lai keep their tones as
bù becomes a neutral tone in actual speech. For example:

Xiǎo Lì jin bù qu tàde bāngōngshì.
Xiao Li cannot go into his office.
Wǒ bù zhídào tà wèishénme jin bù lai.
I don’t know why she cannot come in.

Exercises

Exercise 1

Insert le in each sentence below in an appropriate position. Then
translate them into English:

(a) Zuòtiān wǒ bàba gěi wǒ dà diànhuà.
(b) Nǐ kàn. Xiàxué.
(c) Rūguò tā míntiān hái bù dào, wǒ jiù zǒu.
(d) Sān tiān qiàn, tā chǐ dào bān ge xiāoshi.

(e) Wǒ bù xiǎng qù dòngwùyuán. Wǒ lèi.
(f) Zhème shuō, nǐ shì Feǐxiá?

Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks below with dí ěr ci or liáng ci:

(a) Zhè shì Richard ______ dào Táiwǎn.
(b) Wǒ chǐ guò ______ Běijīng kào yà.
(c) Wǒ_______ wǎng le dǎi yàoshi.
(d) Zhè ge xīngqī, zánmén lǎobān de mishǔ chí dào le ______.
(e) Dì yī ci, shì lǎi Běijīng lǚyóu, ______, shì lǎi gōngzuò.

Exercise 3

Fill in the blanks with lāi or qu either as the verb or the
directional word:

(a) Míngtiān, wǒ dài nǐ ______ guǎng shàngdiǎn.
(b) Zhèr hěn lěng. Zánmén jin ______ tán, háo ma?
(c) (On the phone) Nǐ kěyì ràng Xiǎo Lì dāi nǐ ______ wǒ jià.
(d) Zàoɡuō, wǒ měi dǎi yàoshi. Jīn bù ______ wǒde bāngōngshì.
(e) (Feǐxiá knocks at Lào Wāng’s door. Lào Wāng opens the door:)

Feǐxiá: Wǒ yǒu yì jiàn shì xiǎng tónɡ nǐ tán. Nǐ yǒu
kōnɡ ma?

Exercise 4

Translate the following into Chinese:

(a) I go to work at eight o’clock every morning.
(b) Everybody likes him.
(c) I got to know her two years ago.
(d) She went to Hong Kong twice last year.
(e) I telephone my parents every two weeks.
(f) She is going to her parents’ for the Chinese New Year.
Dialogue 2

Nǐ zuì xǐhuan nǎ ge difang?
你最喜欢哪个地方？ Which place do you like most？

Graham has just come back from a tour in China. He is in Boston
today to meet his Chinese friend Chen Ailín. At the moment, he is
knocking at Ailín’s door.

Graham: Hén chénggèng.
Ailín: Nǐ qù le nǎ jī ge chéngshì?
Graham: Běijīng, Shànghǎi, Xiān, Gǔlínn hé Guǎngzhōu.
Ailín: Nǐ zuì xǐhuan nǎ ge difang?
Nǎlí fēngjǐng hěn měi. Dǎngdī rén yě hěn yóuhào. Tóng
tāmen tān hūà hěn yóu yí.
Ailín: Wǒ méi qù guō Gǔlínn. Xià cì yídīng qù. Nǐ juédé
Guǎngzhōu zhěnme yàng?
Ailín: Wǒ yě bù xǐhuan Guǎngzhōu. Tíngshuō Chángchēng
hěn xióngwěi. Shì ma?
Graham: Shí de. Shìfēn zhōu huáguān. Wǒ pāi le xióudōu zhàopiàn…

Zuó, zuó.
Graham: Hǎo de. Nǐ hào ma, Ailín?
Ailín: Bù cuó. Xièxiè. Nǐ xiǎng hě diànr shénme?
Graham: Zhōngguó chá, xièxiè.
Ailín: (whilst making the tea) Shuòqǐ Zhōngguó, nǐde
Zhōngguó zhī xǐng zěnmé yàng?
Zuó, zuó.
Graham: Hǎo de. Nǐ hào ma, Ailín?
Ailín: Bù cuó. Xièxiè. Nǐ xiǎng hě diànr shénme?
Graham: Zhōngguó chá, xièxiè.
Ailín: (whilst making the tea) Shuòqǐ Zhōngguó, nǐde
Zhōngguó zhī xǐng zěnmé yàng?

Vocabulary

diǎnr 点儿  a little/some
chá 茶 tea
shuōqī 说 起 talking about/to talk about
zhī xíng 之 行 the trip to … [lit. 'of trip']
chénggōng 成功 to be successful/success
chéngshì 城市 city
huídá 回答 to answer
fēngjǐng 风景 scenery
měi 美 to be beautiful/beautiful
dǎngdī 当地 local
tánhuà 谈话 to talk
yóuhào 友好 to be friendly/friendly [yóu, third tone in isolation]
xià cì 下次 next time
Chángchēng 长城 the Great Wall [lit. 'long city wall']
xióngwěi 雄伟 to be grandiose
shūfēn 十分 extremely
zhōuhuáguān 祖国 to be magnificent
pāi 拍 to take/to shoot
zhàopiàn 照片 photograph

Notes to Dialogue 2

13 Lack of qǐng in many expressions

In Chinese, the word qǐng (please), as has been mentioned before,
is seldom used among friends and on informal occasions. The omission
of qǐng does not suggest any lack of politeness or warmth in
expressions such as Kuài jǐn lái, Zuò, etc. These expressions are
often repeated to make the guest feel that he/she is very welcome.
For example:

(At the dinner table, the hostess says:)

Chī, chī. Bié kěqí.
Lit. Eat, eat. Don’t be polite.

Help yourself. Don’t be polite.
(Inviting your guest to come in:)

_Inviting your guest to some tea:

14 Use of _zuò_

In English, phrases such as _to call in, to come around, to go to see,_ etc. are used to talk about informal visits. In Chinese, the literal translation of similar expressions is ‘to go someone’s home sit sit’ or ‘sit for a while’. For example:

_Wǒ kěyì dào nǐ jiā _zuò_ zuò ma?_  
Could I _come around to see you?_

_Zuówān, Guāngmén lāi _zuò_ le yīhuì._  
Guangmen _called in for a while last night._

15 Use of _retroflex ending r_

The sound _r_, pronounced with the tongue rolled backward a bit, is often added to phrases such as _yīdiàn, yǒu yīdiàn, yīhui_ (a while), etc. In such cases, _y_ is usually omitted. For example:

_Nǐ xiǎng hē diàn _r_ shénme?_  
What would you like to drink?

_Wǒ yǒu diàn _r_ è._  
I’m a bit hungry.

_Děng _hui._  
Wait for a second.

Note that when _r_ is added to _diān_, the nasal _n_ sound gets dropped off.

16 Use of _zhī xíng_

Although this is very much a written expression, it is often used in colloquial speech to refer to a particular trip. Simply put the place name before _zhī xíng_. For example:

_Tīngshuō nǐde Zhōngguó zhī xíng hén chénggōng._  
I’ve heard that your _trip to China _was very successful.

17 Use of _nā_ _jī_

_Literally, _nā _jī_ + a measure word means ‘which several’. It can be used to ask about either places or people when the questioner assumes that only a few places or people will be named in the reply. For example:_

_Nǐ qù guó Yingguó _nā_ _jī_ ge chéngshì?_  
Which cities in Britain have you been to?

_Nǐ zài _nā_ _jī jiā gōngsī gōngzuò guò?_  
For which companies have you worked?

18 More on the _topic structure_

The topic or theme of a sentence always occurs at the beginning of that sentence. In English, for example, you can say _It is difficult to answer this question_; but in Chinese, you must say ‘This question is difficult to answer’ or ‘Answering this question is difficult’. For example:

_Tīdé Yingwén hěn nán dōng._  
Topic

_Lit. His English very be difficult understand._

_It’s very difficult to understand his English._

_Zài Zhōngguó, mái huǒchē piào hén nán._  
Topic

_Lit. In China, buy train tickets very be difficult._

_Getting train tickets in China is very difficult._

19 Nǐ juédé _... zēnme yàng?_

_This question can be translated as ‘What do you think of _..._?’. For example:_

_Nǐ juédé Zhāng Hóng _zēnme yàng?_  
What do you think of Zhang Hong?

_Nǐ juédé Méiguó _zēnme yàng?_  
What do you think of America?_
20 rén tài duō

The complete sentence should be Guangzhōu de rén tài duō (lit. 'Guangzhou's people too many'). The reason that Guangzhōu de is omitted is that it can be elicited from the context. Whenever you wish to say 'There are too many... in...', use the pattern something + tài duō. For example:

Běijīng de xíngché tài duō
There are too many bikes in Beijing.

A: Tàiwān zěnme yàng?
How is/was Taiwan?

B: Hěn yǒu yìsi. Dànsì, rén tài duō
Very interesting. But too many people.

21 Negative sentences with yě

In English, 'also' is used in positive sentences whilst either or neither are used in negative sentences; in Chinese, the adverb yě (also) is used in both sentence types. When the sentence with yě is negated, the negation word bù, méi yǒu or méi is placed after yě. Let us compare yě used in both positive and negative sentences:

Wòmen yě xiǎng qù cánjiā Xīn Hǎi de hūnlǐ.
We would like to attend Xīn Hǎi's wedding too.

Tā yě bù xǐhuan Zhōngguó fàn.
She doesn't like Chinese food either.

Lǎo Lǐ zuòtiān méi lái. Xiǎo Wáng yě méi lái.
Lào Lǐ didn't come yesterday and Xiao Wang didn't come either.

Exercise 6

You ask your Chinese friend what she thinks of:

(a) America
(b) summer in Hong Kong
(c) the Beijing Hotel
(d) the locals
(e) David's Chinese

Exercise 7

Negate the following sentences with bù or méi yǒu:

(a) Wǒ yě xǐhuan Zhōngguó fàn.
(b) Tā māma yě qù cánjiā Aǐlǐn de hūnlǐ le.
(c) Tā yě zhūdào yóuyīng chí jī diǎn kǎimén.
(d) Xiǎo Zhāng yě chī dào le.

Exercise 8

Translate the following into Chinese:

(a) It is very interesting to talk to the locals.
(b) Which cities did you go to?
(c) How was your trip to Taiwan?
(d) There are too many people in Guangzhou. It's very noisy and very hot in the summer.
Characters

1 Learning to write hěnduō and dòng

The adjective hěnduō (many/much)

The left part of hěn is called the ‘double person radical’. This is the same hěn as in hěn hǎo (very good/well) and in hěn xīhuan (to like ... very much).

The verb dòng (to understand)

The left part of dòng is called the ‘vertical heart radical’ which often occurs in characters that have to do with thoughts and emotions. The right part, which can be used as a surname, is also pronounced dòng when used in isolation. Quite a number of characters have this feature, namely, the left part gives some indication of the meaning and the right part gives some indication of the pronunciation.

2 Recognizing the following city/place names

Shànghǎi  Xīˈān
Guǐlín  Guāngzhōu  Chánɡchéng
The Great Wall

Reading/listening comprehension

1 Read the following passage (if you have the recording, listen first) and then answer the following questions in Chinese:

Shufang tells her friend about her wedding


Vocabulary

| xiāngcū | to get along |
| dü | to spend |
| miyuè | honeymoon [lit. ‘honey month’] |

Questions

A Dàyōng de fùmǔ zhù zài shénme dífang?
B Dàyōng de fùmǔ cánjiā Shūfāng hé Dàyōng de hùnli le ma?
C Shūfāng de fùmǔ hé Dàyōng de fùmǔ shì di ěr cì jiānmian ma?
D Shūfāng hé Dàyōng qù shénme dífang dū miyuè le? Òu le duō jiǔ?
15 海外来信
Letter from abroad

By the end of this lesson, you will be able to:
- write a simple letter
- use the correct format to write names and addresses on an envelope
- express a continuous action in the past
- express more sophisticated sentences such as 'When I was in China, I . . .'
- recognize some place/country names and write a postcard in characters

Text
Wǒ bǎozhèng 我保证 I promise

Elena and Liu Xiaomei are very close friends. They met when Elena was studying Chinese at a university in Beijing. Although Elena is back in Italy, they write to each other very often. Below is a letter from Elena to Xiaomei.

to: People’s Republic of China

Yóubìān: 100081
Zhōngguó Bèijīng Dōng Zhí Mén Wài Dàjiè 22 Hào 16
Dōng 1 Hào

Líú Xiàoméi Shǒu

Crosa Meccarina, Milan, Italy
亲爱的晓梅：
你好！

你的来信收到了。我真高兴你喜欢你的新工作。

我一切还好，就是工作太忙。上个星期，我一直在伦敦开会。回来后，忙着写一份报告。每天早上六点半起床，晚上十二点才睡觉。我必须在星期五之前写完这份报告。我知道我好久没给你写信了，请别生气。等这个周末我休息的时候，一定给你写封长信，我保证。

好友，
爱丽娜

2000年1月26日

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Qin’ài’de</td>
<td>Xiāoméi</td>
<td>dear [lit. ‘close loved one’]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xīn</td>
<td>xìn</td>
<td>letter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>láixin</td>
<td>lái xìn</td>
<td>letter [lit. ‘come letter’, see Note 3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shōu dào</td>
<td>shōu xià</td>
<td>to receive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xīn</td>
<td>xīn</td>
<td>new/to be new</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīqiē</td>
<td>yīqiè</td>
<td>everything</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiù shì</td>
<td>jiù shì</td>
<td>the only thing is . . . but/except for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shàng ge</td>
<td>shàng ge</td>
<td>last</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīzhī</td>
<td>yīzhī</td>
<td>all the time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lúndūn</td>
<td>LÌndūn</td>
<td>London</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kāi huì</td>
<td>kāi huì</td>
<td>to attend a meeting/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>to attend a conference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hòu</td>
<td>hòu</td>
<td>after/in/ . . . later</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhé</td>
<td>zhé</td>
<td>[grammar word, see Note 9]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiě</td>
<td>xiě</td>
<td>to write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fèn</td>
<td>fèn</td>
<td>[measure word for documents]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bào gào</td>
<td>bào gào</td>
<td>report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qǐchuáng</td>
<td>qǐchuáng</td>
<td>to get up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cái</td>
<td>cái</td>
<td>[emphatic word, see Note 10]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2 Writing an envelope

When writing a name and address on an envelope in Chinese, you first write the recipient's address in one line at the top of the envelope (use a second line if it is a long address); then write the recipient's name in the centre of the envelope and finally put the sender's address, which is put at the bottom of the envelope towards the right-hand corner. The word shōu is usually put after the recipient's name and it means 'to be received by...'. For example:

```
Recipient's address: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
                    XXXXXXX

Recipient's name: XXX  Shōu

Sender's address: XXXXXXXXXXXXX
```

In writing the address, the largest unit comes first. So you put the country first (if you write from abroad) followed by the city, then the street name (or name of an organization), and finally the flat number. Note that the recipient's postcode is placed before the address but the sender's postcode goes after the address. For example, if you write to Mr Wang Lisheng whose address is 26 Dongdan Ave., Beijing, postcode 816001 and your address is Flat 6, Block 10, Xi'an Foreign Languages College, postcode 716001, the envelope should look like this:

```
Yóubían: 816001 Běijīng Dōngdān Dājiè 26 Hào

Wáng Lǐshēng  Shōu

Xiān Wáiguóyuǎn Xuéyuàn 10 Dōng 8 Hào
Yóubían:716001
```
If you send a letter from abroad, all you need to do is to put ‘To: People’s Republic of China’ in English or in the language that is spoken wherever you are at the top of the envelope (see the envelope in the Text).

3 Difference between xin, láixín and qǔxin

The word xin means ‘letter’. Literally, láixín means ‘come letter’ and qǔxin means ‘go letter’. Láixín refers to the letter you have received; and qǔxin refers to the letter you have written to someone. The measure word for letters is fēng. For example:

Zhèr yǒu nǐde yī fēng xīn.
Lit. Here have your one letter.
Here is a letter for you.

Xièxiè nǐde láixín.
Thank you for your letter.

Wǒde qǔxin nǐ shòu dào le ma?
or Nǐ shòu dào wǒde qǔxin le ma?
Have you received my letter?

Whilst láixín and qǔxin are very different, xin can always replace láixín or qǔxin.

4 Wǒ yǐqǐ hǎi hào

This is a very common expression used in writing personal letters to mean ‘Everything is all right with me’. You can also turn it into a question. For example:

Nǐ yǐqǐ hǎi hào ma?
Is everything all right with you?

5 Use of jiù shì

When a general positive statement is followed by another sentence beginning with jiù shì, a mild criticism is expected because jiù shì in this context means ‘the only thing is . . .’, ‘but’ or ‘except for/except that . . .’. For example:

Xiāng Gǎng hěn yǒu yìsī, jiù shì xiàtiān tài rè.
Hong Kong is very interesting. The only thing is that it’s too hot in the summer.

Nà ge yóuyòng chí hén hào, jiù shì yǒu diànr yuán.
That swimming pool is very good except that it’s a bit far away.

6 Different terms for ‘last’, ‘next’ and ‘this’

You can use shàng ge (last), xià ge (next) and zhè ge (this) together with xīngqī (week) and yuè (month), but not with tiān (day) and nián (year). Below is a chart illustrating the differences:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zuòtiān</td>
<td>yesterday</td>
<td>shàng yuè</td>
<td>last month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīntiān</td>
<td>today</td>
<td>zhè yuè</td>
<td>this month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mìngtiān</td>
<td>tomorrow</td>
<td>xià yuè</td>
<td>next month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shàng yuè xīngqī</td>
<td>last week</td>
<td>qù nián</td>
<td>last year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhè yuè xīngqī</td>
<td>this week</td>
<td>jīn nián</td>
<td>this year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xià yuè xīngqī</td>
<td>next week</td>
<td>mìng nián</td>
<td>next year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 Use of yǐzhǐ

When you want to emphasize the continuation of an event, use yǐzhǐ in front of zài to mean ‘all the time’. For example:

Zhúōtiān wánshāng, wǒ yǐzhǐ zài xiè xīn.
I was writing letters all night last night.

However, if you want to say ‘He was attending a conference in Taiwan last month’, you must say Tā shàng yuè yǐzhǐ zài Táiwān kāi huì. Since zài is used in zài Táiwān to mean ‘in Taiwan’, the continuous indicator zài must not be used. Thus you cannot say Tā shàng yuè yǐzhǐ zài Táiwān zài kāi huì.

8 Use of hòu

In English, after or in is placed before a phrase or a sentence (e.g. In three days’ time . . ., After he came back . . .) and later is placed after a phrase or a sentence (e.g. A week later . . .). But in Chinese, hòu (after/in/... later) always occurs at the end of a phrase or a sentence. For example:

Cóng Bǎi huílái hòu, wǒ shèntǐ bù tài hào.
I haven’t been very well since I came back from Paris.
12 Use of . . . de shíhou

The expression . . . de shíhou (when/while) is placed at the end of the first half of a phrase or sentence. It can be used to describe present, past or future events. For example:

Shàng dàxué de shíhou, wǒ hén xihuan yóuyōng.
I liked swimming very much when I was at university.

Bú gāoxìng de shíhou, yóuxiè rén xihuan guāng shāngdiàn.
Some people like to go shopping when they are unhappy.

When . . . de shíhou is used to describe a future event, the verb děng (to wait) is usually put at the very beginning of a phrase or sentence. For example:

Děng zhè ge zhōumò wǒ yòu kòng de shíhou, yídīng gěi nǐ xiě fēng cháng xīn.
I'll definitely write you a long letter when I have time this weekend.

Exercises

Exercise 1

Write a short letter to your family or friend.

Exercise 2

Write the following information on an envelope:

Recipient’s name: Huang Weilei; recipient’s address: Apt. 3, Block 46, 6 Chang An Avenue, Xi’an, postcode 710061, P.R. China. You are the sender and are currently in another country (make up your own address).

Exercise 3

Fill in the blanks with xīn, lǎixin or qùxin:

(a) (Telling someone) Zuòtiān, wǒ shòu dào le sān fēng _________.
(b) (Writing to someone) Wǒ zhēn gāoxìng shòu dào le nǐde _________.

11 Use of zài . . . zhī qián

The phrase zài . . . zhī qián means ‘before . . .’ or ‘by . . .’, which emphasizes that something must be done by a certain date/day. That certain date/day is always placed between zài and zhī qián. For example:

Zài nǐ qiú Zhōngguó zhī qián, kěyǐ gěi wǒ dā ge diànhuà ma?
Could you give me a ring before you go to China?

Tā bù xū zài xīngqiū zhī qián xiě wán zhè bèn shū.
She must finish writing this book by Friday.

10 Emphatic word cǎi

Cǎi is an adverb used to indicate that something happens too late (e.g. ‘start, end, etc. too late’). Sometimes, it can be broadly translated as ‘only’ or ‘just’, but other times, it can be translated as ‘. . . until . . .’ For example:

Nǐ zěnme cǎi qíchuǎng?
How come you just got up?
Wǒ māma měi tiān wànshang shíèr diǎn cǎi shuǐjiào.
Every night, my mother doesn’t go to bed until 12 o’clock.
David zuòtiān cǎi zòu.
David only left yesterday.

The sentence David zuòtiān cǎi zòu implies that he planned to leave earlier. Another thing to notice is that the past particle le cannot be used with cǎi if the event described happened in the definite past.

9 Grammar word zhe

Zhe is placed between the verb–adjective mǎng (to be busy) and a verb to mean ‘to be busy doing something’. For example:

Wǒ mǎng zhe zhāo gōngzuò. I’m busy looking for a job.
Tā mǎng zhe xué Zhōngwén. She is busy learning Chinese.

Sān tiān hòu, wǒ gěi nǐ dà diànhuà.
I’ll telephone you in three days’ time.

Yí ge xìngqì hòu, Xiǎo Fāng jiàndào le tài diě mèimei.
Xiao Fang met her younger sister a week later.
Exercise 4

Match the words in the left column with those in the right column (there are several possible combinations):

(a) 1 天 (day)
(b) 2 年 (year)
(c) 3 星期 (week)
(d) 4 月 (month)
(e) 左

Exercise 5

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:
(a) 你的家很漂亮但是不容易找到。
(b) 我昨晚在家写信。
(c) 我喜欢给朋友写信。
(d) 不要生气。
(e) 我下班后去了市场。
(f) 我们老板正忙着打电话。
(g) 我前天收到了父母的信。
(h) 当我在北京时，我经常骑自行车。
(i) 他一定会在一星期后寄给你那本书。

Characters

1 Learning to write yóubìan (postcode), jiē (avenue) and shòu (to be received by . . .)

The character yóu has 由, informally known as the ‘ear radical’ (possibly because it looks a bit like an ear). Note that the radical is on the right side. The left part of yóu 由 gives a clue to the pronunciation because it is pronounced yóu in isolation. The ‘ear radical’ sometimes appears on the left side. For example, the family name 陈, Chen, has the ‘ear radical’ on the left. The character 偏 has the ‘silk radical’ on the left and the right part 偏 is pronounced 偏 on its own.

jiē 街

This character consists of three parts and each part takes up approximately the same amount of space.

shòu 收

Exercise 6

Write a postcard or short letter in characters. Ask your tutor or a Chinese friend to check it.
Reading comprehension

Read this postcard and then answer the questions in English:

Bóbín:
Nǐ hǎo! Hǎo jiù méi yǒu shòu
dào nǐde xìn le. Nǐ yǐqiě hǎi hào
ma? Wǒ xià ge yuè bā hào
zuóyóu yào qù Guǎngzhōu kǎi
huì. Rǎnqiú nǐ dào shǐhòu yǒu
kòng dehùa, wǒ hěn xiāng
jiànjìn nǐ. Qíng huì xìn gàosu
wǒ nǐde diànhuà hǎomá.

Lín Bóbín

Zhù hǎo
Zhāng Xīn
94. 6. 18
Běijīng Qián Mén 1 Hào
Yóubiàn: 100081

Vocabulary

dào shíhou then/around that time
jiànjìn to meet
huí xīn to reply [lit. ‘return letter’]
zhù hǎo best wishes [lit. ‘wish well’]
xī department
xīnxiāng post box

Questions

A Who is the recipient of this postcard?
B What is the recipient’s address?
C Where does the recipient work (based on the recipient’s address)?
D Where does Zhang Xin live?
E Why is Zhang Xin going to Guangzhou?
F When is Zhang Xin going to Guangzhou?
G Does Zhang Xin know Bobin’s telephone number?

Grammar summary

This is not an exhaustive summary of Chinese grammar. It is just a summary of the main grammatical concepts which have been introduced in this book.

The pinyin alphabet

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>bā</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>ná</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>bǐ</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>wǒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>cái</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>píng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>dī</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>qǐ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>tè</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>̀r̀i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>fā</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>sān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>gē</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>tàn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>hē</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>tú</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>ì/s/i/zhī</td>
<td>̀ù ì/lù</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>jī</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>xià</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>kè</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>yǒu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>léi</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>zǒu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Word order

It is easier to talk about the word order with the help of some grammatical terms. Let us first define the following terms:

Subject – the topic of a sentence. Nouns, noun phrases, verbal phrases can all function as the subject in Chinese.
Verb – a doing word.
Object – a noun or its equivalent acted upon by (a) a verb whose meaning is incomplete unless followed by something (e.g. in


‘I play table-tennis’, ‘table-tennis’ is the object of the verb ‘play’; or (b) a preposition (e.g. in ‘I’m not against him’, ‘him’ is the object of the preposition ‘against’).

**Prepositional phrase** – a preposition followed by a noun or equivalent such as place names, etc. (e.g. ‘in London’).

Word order in Chinese is quite fixed. The common patterns are:

- **subject + verb + object**
  - Wǒ mǎi dōngxi. I buy things.
- **subject + time + verb + object**
  - Wǒ qiū diǎn qù mǎi dōngxi. I’m going shopping at six o’clock.
- **subject + prepositional phrase + verb + object**
  - Tā qù nián lái de Yīngguó. She came to Britain last year.
- **object + subject + verb (to emphasize the object)**
  - Xīn wǒ xiě le. I did write the letter.

**Topic structure**

In English, the topic or theme of a sentence can be put at the end of the sentence by using the *It is . . . to . . .* pattern (e.g. in *It is very interesting to talk to him, to talk to him* is the topic.) In Chinese, since the ‘It is . . . to . . .’ pattern is not used, the topic always occurs at the beginning of a sentence:

- Nǐ jiā hén nán zhǎo. It is difficult to find your house.
- Qǐ xínxíngchē hěn yòu yìsi. It is very interesting to cycle.

**Nouns**

Nouns are the same regardless of number:

- Wǒ yǒu yī ge měimei. I have one younger sister.
- Wǒ yǒu liǎng ge měimei. I have two younger sisters.

**Articles**

Articles such as *the, a* or *an* in English do not exist in Chinese. Whether something is specific or general can be inferred from the context:

- Tā hái méi huán gěi wǒ shū. She still hasn’t returned me the book.
- Wǒ qù shùdiàn mǎi yī běn shū. I’m going to the bookshop to buy one book.
- Wǒ qù mǎi shū. I’m going to buy some books.

**Adjectives**

Adjectives are always placed before nouns. De is usually inserted between the adjective and the noun (a) if the adjective is modified by an adverb; and (b) if a two-syllable adjective is used to modify a noun:

- hǎo zhǔyì good idea
- hěn hǎo de zhǔyì very good idea
- xiōngwéi de guāngchāng the magnificent square

**Verb–adjectives**

In English, adjectives can be preceded by the verb *to be*; in Chinese, some adjectives can incorporate the verb *to be* and they become verb–adjectives. For example, the word lǎo is an adjective when it means ‘old’, but it is a verb–adjective when it means ‘to be old’. Thus, the verb shǐ (to be) is not used in this case. When these verb–adjectives are used, they are usually modified by adverbs such as hěn (very), tīng (rather), etc. in front of them:

- Wǒ hěn máng. I am very busy.
- Dāngdī rén hěn yōuhào. The locals are very friendly.

**Measure words**

Measure words are a distinctive feature of the Chinese language. A measure word is usually used between (a) a numeral and a noun; and (b) a demonstrative pronoun (i.e. zhè (this) or nà (that)) and a noun. The most common measure word is gě:

- Wǒ yǒu sān ge dìdì. I have three younger brothers.
- Zhè ge rén hěn qīguài. This person is very strange.

Different measure words are used with different nouns. Below are some commonly used measure words:
Currency words, unit words and nouns such as 天 (day), 年 (year), etc. do not require measure words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bā yuán</td>
<td>eight yuan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liăng tiăn</td>
<td>two days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wú nián</td>
<td>five years</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pronouns

1 Personal pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wǒ</td>
<td>I, me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǐ</td>
<td>you (singular)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǐn</td>
<td>you (polite form)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>he/she/, him/her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wǒmen</td>
<td>we, us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǐmen</td>
<td>you (plural)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāmen</td>
<td>they, them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These personal pronouns can be used in both subject and object positions:

Wǒ xiǎng wǒde māmǎ. I miss my mother.
Wǒde māmǎ xiāng wǒ. My mother misses me.

Tá is seldom used to mean ‘it’ as a subject. It occasionally occurs in the object position:

Mǐmǐ tā. Touch it.

Most of the time, any reference to ‘it’ can be inferred from the context:

Wǒ xiǎhuán Zhōngguó fàn. I like Chinese food. It's very tasty.
Hěn háo chi.

Similarly, tāmen is rarely used to refer to things.

2 Possessive adjectives and possessive pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Possessive adjective and possessive pronoun</th>
<th>Possessive adjective (in front of nouns)</th>
<th>Possessive pronoun (at the end of the sentence)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wǒde</td>
<td>my</td>
<td>mine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǐde</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāde</td>
<td>his/her</td>
<td>his/hers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
wōménède our ours
niménède your yours
táménède their theirs

To form possessive adjectives and possessive pronouns, simply add de to personal pronouns wō, nǐ, tā, wōmen, nimen, tāmen:

Wōde shū diū le. My book is missing.
Zhè běn shū shì wōde. This book is mine.

3 Demonstrative pronouns

zhè this
nà that
zhèxiē these
nàxiē those

Zhè or nà never occurs in object positions. Zhè is used in many cases where ‘it’ is used in English:

Zhè hěn yǒu yìsī. It is very interesting.

When the measure word ge is added to zhè and nà, we have zhège and nàge. These then are demonstrative adjectives:

Nà ge rén hěn gāo. That person is very tall.
Zhè liàng zìxíngchē huài le. This bike is broken.

Numbers

1 Cardinal numbers

0-99:

0-9
零 zero 一 yī one
er (liǎng) two sān three sì four
er (wǔ) five liù six qī seven bā eight jiǔ nine

10-19
十分 十十 shí ten shíyī eleven shíèr twelve shíshān thirteen shísì fourteen shíwǔ fifteen shíliù sixteen shíqī seventeen shíbā eighteen shíjiǔ nineteen
er (èr) twenty-er (shíyī) twenty-one shíèr twenty-two shíshān twenty-three shísì twenty-four shíwǔ twenty-five shíliù twenty-six shíqī twenty-seven shíbā twenty-eight shíjiǔ twenty-nine

The numbers 30, 40, etc. up to 90 are formed by adding shí (ten) to sān (three), sì (four), etc. Thus we have sānshí (thirty), sìshí (forty), etc. to jiǔshí (ninety). The numbers 31-9, 41-9, etc., use the same principle as 21-9 above. An apostrophe (‘) is used to mark the break between two syllables whenever there is ambiguity in pronunciation. Thus we have shì’èr (twelve) instead of shìèr.

100-1,000
The same pattern continues with bāi (hundred), qiān (thousand) and wàn (ten thousand):

yībāi ěrshí one hundred and twenty
wǔqiān lǐng liùshí five thousand and sixty

2 Ordinal numbers

Simply add di to cardinal numbers:

dì yī first
dì shìyī eleventh
dì èrshíèr twenty-second

Verbs

Chinese verbs remain the same regardless of first-, second-, or third-person pronouns, singular or plural:

wǒ shì I am
tā shì he/she is
támén shì they are

Verbs do not indicate tenses. Let us take the verb qù (to go) for example:

Wǒ míngtiān qù Zhōngguó. I am going to China tomorrow.
Zhúótiān, wǒ méi qù kàn Yesterday, I didn’t go to see my friends.
Tā qù tūshūguǎn le. He has gone to the library.
He went to the library.

The future and the past are indicated by the time phrases such as míngtiān (tomorrow) and zuòtiān (yesterday) and some grammar words such as le (see Grammar Words below).
Grammar words (particles)

1 le indicates that:
   (a) an action happened in the past:
   Wǒ zuótiān mǎi le yì liàng zìxíngchē. I bought a bike yesterday.
   (b) an action has happened and may still be happening:
   Tā qù túsīguǎn le. He has gone to the library.
   (He has not come back yet.)
   (c) there is a change of state (when used at the end of a sentence):
   Xiàyǔ le. It's raining. (It wasn't raining before.)
   Wǒ kěi le. I'm getting tired. (I wasn't tired before.)

2 guo, although also indicating a past event, puts emphasis on the aspect that something has been experienced:
   Wǒ chí guo Zhōngguó fàn. I have had Chinese food.
   Tā qù guo Méiguó liǎng cì. He has been to America twice.

3 zài indicates the continuous state of a verb. It is placed before the verb:
   Wǒ zài chí wǎnfàn. I am having supper.

Negation words

1 bù is used with most verbs and verb–adjectives:
   Wǒ bù xihuan zhè ge chéngshì. I don't like this city.
   Tā bù máng. He is not busy.

2 méi is used to negate the verb yǒu (to have):
   Wǒ méi yǒu gēge. I do not have brothers.

3 méi yǒu or méi is used to indicate that:
   (a) something has not happened:
   Wǒ méi yǒu (or méi) chī guo Zhōngguó fàn.
   I haven't had Chinese food.
   (b) something did not happen:
   Tā zuótiān méi yǒu (or méi) lái shàng bān.
   She did not come to work yesterday.

Questions

To form questions that require a 'yes' or 'no' answer, simply add the particle ma to the end of a sentence:

Nǐ shì Yīngguó rén. → Nǐ shì Yīngguó rén ma? You are British. Are you British?

Another way of forming a yes/no question is to repeat the verb with the negation word bù or méi as appropriate inserted in between:

Nǐ chǐ bù chǐ dàsuàn? Do you eat garlic?
Nǐ yǒu méi yǒu jiējié? Do you have elder sisters?

When question words such as shénme (what), shénme shìhou (when), nǎr (where), etc. are used to ask questions, the sentence order is not changed. The question word occupies the position in the sentence where the information required should appear in the reply:

A: Nǐ jiào shénme?
   What are you called?
B: Wǒ jiào Li Xīng.
   I am called Li Xīng.
   A: Nǐ shénme shìhou qù Zhōngguó?
      When are you going to China?
B: Wǒ míngtiān qù Zhōngguó.
   I'm going to China tomorrow.

Directional words

In English, words such as in and out are used to indicate the direction of a verb, for example, Please come in and I'd like to go out.
In Chinese, directional words such as lái (lit. 'come'), qù (lit. 'go'), etc. are used after a verb in these cases:

Qǐng jīn lái.
   Please come in.
Wǒ xiǎng chū qù yīhuī.
   I'd like to go out for a while.
Adverbs

1. When adverbs describe adjectives, they are placed before adjectives:
   
   Tā fēicháng piàoliang. She is extremely good-looking.

2. When adverbs describe the manner of an action:
   
   (a) they are placed before the verb in an imperative sentence (i.e. order, suggestion):

   Kuài zǒu. Wǒmen yào chí dào le.
   Lit. Quickly walk. We will late arrive.
   Hurry up. We'll be late.

   (b) they are placed after the verb and the linking word de if the degree or result of an action is indicated:

   Wǒ zuòtiān wǎnshāng shuì de hǎo. I slept well last night.

Many adverbs usually have the same form as adjectives.

Prepositions

Prepositions are not used as often as in English. The preposition zài (at/in) can also be used in the object position, in which case it means 'to be at/in':

Wǒ zài Běijīng dài le sì tiān. I stayed in Beijing for four days.

Tā zuòwǎn bù zài. He wasn't in last night.
Exercise 6

(a) B: Nǐ hǎo. (b) B: Bù kěqì. (c) B: Shí de. (d) B: Bù shì. (e) B: Xiǎng, xièxiè.

Exercise 7

(a) Lào Wáng bù xiǎng hē kāfēi. (b) David bù hěn gāoxíng. (c) David hěn bù gāoxíng. (d) Wǒde yǐlù bù hěn shùnhū. (e) Wǒde yǐlù hěn bù shùnhū. (f) Tā bù shì Jones xiānshēng.

Exercise 8

(a) Hěn lèi. (b) Yǒu yǐdiǎn lèi. (c) Bù tài lèi.

Exercise 9

(a) wǒde, tāde; (b) Tāde; (c) wǒde, Andrew de.

Reading/listening comprehension questions

A John. B No, he had a very rough trip. C He asks John if he would like a coffee. D He says that he would very much like a coffee.

Lesson 2

Exercise 1

1(c) Germany; 2(h) Italy; 3(b) France; 4(a) Japan; 5(e) Hong Kong; 6(d) Australia; 7(f) New Zealand; 8(g) Singapore.

Exercise 2

(a) Yingguórén; (b) Méiguórén; (c) Zhōngguórén; (d) Yīdǎilírén; (e) Táiwǎnrén; (f) Xiānggāngrén; (g) Aōdàlǐyàrén; (h) Ribénrén.

Exercise 3

(a) Yingwén; (b) Yingwén; (c) Zhōngwén; (d) Yīdǎilíwén; (e) Zhōngwén; (f) Fáwén; (g) Zhōngwén/Yīngwén/Guǎngdōnghuà (Cantonese); (h) Riwén.

Exercise 4

(a) Nǐ jiào shénme? (b) Nǐ shì nǎlǐ rén? (c) Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?

Exercise 5

(a) yídiǎn; (b) yóu yídiǎn; (c) yǒu yídiǎn; (d) yídiǎn.

Exercise 6

(a) A: Nǐ shì nǎ guó rén? (b) A: Tā shì nǎlǐ rén? (c) B: Nǎlǐ, nǎlǐ. (d) B: Bù hui.

Exercise 7

(a) Nǐ zhīdào Amy shì nǎ guó rén ma? (b) Wǒ bù hui shuō Yīngwén. (c) Tā bù shì Ribénrén. (d) Wǒbùzhīdào tā jiào shénme.

Exercise 8

For your reference only:

Exercise 9

(a) B: Nǎlǐ, nǎlǐ/Guójiāng. (b) B: Sānshí suí zuòyǒu. (c) B: Bù dui.

Exercise 10

(a) zhīdào; (b) rěnshí/zhīdào; (c) zhīdào; (d) rěnshí.

Exercise 11

(a) Tā jiào shénme? (b) Xiǎo Fāng shì nǎlí rén? (c) Amy jīn nián duō dà le?
Exercise 12

(a) Tà kànshang qu bù hěn găoxíng. (b) Simon kànshang qu hěn niánqìng. (c) Nǐ kànshang qu yóu yídànlèi.

Reading/listening comprehension questions

1 A Yes, she does. B Britain. C Yes, a little. D No, she does not. E Yes, she very much likes to.

2 Tones (a) xiéxié (fourth, neutral); (b) bù zhídăo (fourth, first, neutral); (c) bù dù (second, fourth); (d) Yìngguórén (first, second, second); (e) shuò Zhōngwén (first, first, second); (f) tài hǎo le (fourth, third, neutral); (g) zàijìan (fourth, fourth); (h) wǒ yě shì (second, third, fourth).

Lesson 3

Exercise 1

For your reference only:

Exercise 2

(a) John shì bù tài máng. (John is not very busy.) (b) Shūlán de gōngzuò shì hěn máng. (Shulan is very busy with her work.) (c) Wáng Lǐn kànshāng qu shì tǐng lăo. (Wang Lin does look rather old.)

Exercise 3

(a) A: Nǐ zuòtiān qù nár le? / Zuòtiān nǐ qù le nár? 
   B: Qù Lùndùn le. / Qù le Lùndùn.

(b) A: Nǐ xià ge xīngqǐ qù nár? / Xià ge xīngqǐ nǐ qù nár?
   B: Zhōngguó. / Qù Zhōngguó.

(c) A: Yánzhòng qù nár le?
   B: Tà qù Mèiguó le.

Exercise 4

(a) Andrew qù le Mèiguó. / Andrew qù Mèiguó le. (Andrew went to America. / Andrew has gone to America.) (b) Elena hē le kāfēi. / Elena hē kāfēi le. (Elena had her coffee. / Elena has had her coffee.) (c) Zuòtiān Xīnháng shuōqí le Tiānyī. (Xinhang mentioned Tianyi yesterday.)

Exercise 5

(a) jiándào; (b) jiānmìan; (c) jiānmìan; (d) jiándào.

Exercise 6

(a) Rènshì. Tāmén shì hǎo péngyou. (b) Bù rènshì. (c) Mèi jiéhūn. (d) Tā shì WP gōngsī de fū jīnglí, yě shì Rachel de nán péngyou.

Exercise 7

(a) shíwǔ ge Mèiguórén; (b) liăng ge Zhōngguórén; (c) sān ge nán de; (d) bā běi kāfēi; (e) si ge hǎo péngyou.

Exercise 8

(a) Yòu. (b) Mèi yòu. (c) Zhēn kěxī!

Exercise 9

(a) Yánzhòng qù nár le? (b) Shèi shì WP gōngsī de fū jīnglí? (c) Shūlán shì ná guò rēn? (d) Nǐ xià ge xīngqǐ qù nár?

Exercise 10

(a) Wǒ xià ge xīngqǐ bù qù Zhōngguó. (I'm not going to China next week.) (b) Jane měi yòu jiéhūn. (Jane hasn't got married.) (c) Xiǎo Fāng měi yòu Yìdālǐ kāfēi. (Xiao Fang hasn't got Italian coffee.) (d) Wáng Pīn bù rènshì Méixīn. (Wang Pin does not know Meixin.) (e) Zuòtiān wǒmen měi qù Lùndùn. (We didn't go to London yesterday.) (f) Wǒ bù xiǎng hē kāfēi. (I don't want to have coffee.)
Exercise 11
(a) jiù; (b) shì; (c) shì; (d) jiù.

Exercise 12
(a) 女人
(b) 中国人
(c) 你好
(d) 我说中文

Reading/listening comprehension questions
A true; B false; C false; D true; E false; F true; G false.

Lesson 4

Exercise 1
(a) shì diǎn ěrsìshíwǔ (fěn); (b) liǎng diǎn bàn / liǎng diǎn sānsíshí (fěn); (c) shì’èr diǎn sānkě / shì’èr diǎn sìsìshíwǔ / shì’èr diǎn chà shíwǔ / shì’èr diǎn chá yǐ kě; (d) liù diǎn shí fēn; (e) sì diǎn yī kě / sì diǎn shíwǔ (fěn); (f) jiǔ diǎn wǔ fēn / jiǔ diǎn líng wǔ (fěn).

Exercise 2
(a) 4 jiǔ diǎn yī kě; (b) 6 sì diǎn chà wǔ fēn; (c) 5 liǎng diǎn sìsìshíwǔ; (d) 2 shìyī diǎn ěrsìshí fēn; (e) 1 bā diǎn líng wǔ; (f) 3 shì’èr diǎn bàn.

Exercise 3
(a) Zàoshāng hǎo. (b) Xiànzáì ji diǎn le? (c) Qīng wén, nǐ jiào shénmé? (d) Bù kèqì / Bù xiè.

Exercise 4
(a) cōng ... dào ... (The breakfast is from seven to eight thirty.)
(b) fēnzhōng (We have five minutes for coffee.) (c) Xiànzáì ... (It’s half past six now.) (d) yǐjīng (She is already married.)

Exercise 5
(a) Cántǐng jǐ diǎn kǎimén? (b) Nǐ zhīdào cántǐng jǐ diǎn kǎimén ma? (c) Alán yǐjīng sānshí suí le. (d) Qīng kuài lái Yingguó.

Exercise 6
(a) Dùibùqǐ. (b) Qīng wén, yóu yǒu chī jǐ diǎn kǎimén? (c) Dùibùqǐ.

Exercise 7
For your reference only:
(a) Wǒ qí diǎn ěrsì shí chǐ zǎo fán. (b) Wǒ shì’èr diǎn bàn zuòyòu chǐ wūfàn. (c) Wǒbā diǎn chí wán fán. (d) Wǒ sān diǎn zuòyòu yóuyǒng.

Exercise 8
(a) Běijīng yǒu ěrsì shí ge dà fǎndiǎn. (b) Wǒmén (de) fǎndiǎn yǒu liǎng ge cántǐng. (c) Zhè ge gōngcǐ yǒu Zhōngguó rén ma? (d) Běijīng Fǎndiǎn méi yǒu yóuyǒng chǐ.

Exercise 9
(a) Tā shì bù shì Yìngguó rén? (Is he/she British?) (b) Nǐ zuìjīn máng bù máng? (Have you been busy recently?) (c) Zhāng Bīn yǒu méi yǒu nǐ péngyǒu? (Does Zhang Bin have a girlfriend?) (d) Nǐ xiǎng bù xiǎng qù Zhōngguó? (Do you want to go to China?)

Exercise 10
(a) Dùibùqǐ. (b) Xiànzáí jǐ diǎn le? (c) Cántǐng jǐ diǎn kǎimén? (d) Huijīàn.

Exercise 11

Exercise 12
你想说中文吗?
Reading/listening comprehension questions

1 A (b) bù hén máng; B (a) yóu yòng; C (c) chí wúfàn; D (b) shí'èr diàn sānshí; E (a) shí'èr diàn yì kè; F (b) sān diàn.

2 Tones (a) hújiàn (second, fourth); (b) cāngtìng (first, first); (c) duībùqí (fourth, fourth, third); (d) dà de (fourth, neutral).

Lesson 5

Exercise 1

1 jiějie = (b) elder sister; 2 dǐ = (d) younger brother; 3 gēge = (a) elder brother; 4 yěye = (e) grandfather; 5 mèimei = (c) younger sister; 6 ài = (h) aunt; 7 nímā = (f) grandmother; 8 shūshū = (g) uncle.

Exercise 2

(a) Wǒmāma zāi hé kāfēi. (My mum is having coffee.) (b) Yingměi zāi chī zàofàn ma? (Is Yingmei having her breakfast?) (c) Tā bù zāi yóuyǒng. (He/she isn’t swimming.) (d) Nǐ bābā zāi gōngzuò ma? (Is your father working?)

Exercise 3

(a) shāng / qù; (b) shāng; (c) qù / shāng; (d) shāng.

Exercise 4

(a) Jié(hún) le. (b) Yīlíshābái / Elizabeth. (c) Méiguó-rén. (d) Yōu. (e) Nǚér jiào Méilíng. Erzī jiào Zhīgāng. (f) Bù shì. Tā shì dà xuēshèng. (g) Yingměi shì Shàotáng de mèimei.

Exercise 5

(a) Lǎo Zhāng dāng le Běijīng Fǎdiǎn de jīnglì. (b) Tāmén yǒu liǎng ge hǎizi. Liǎng ge hǎizi dōu yǒu Zhōngwén míngzi. (c) Wǒměn dōu tukū le. (d) Tāmén bù gōngzuò le. (e) Wǒ dìdi hǎi méi shàng xiàoxué. (f) Shāngxué hěn yǒu yīsi. (g) Nǐ xué shénme zhǔnyè? (h) Qǐng gēi wǒjiāngjiāng nǐde zhǎngfu. (i) Lùndào wǒ shuō Zhōngwén le.

Exercise 6

(a) He/she does not live in Beijing. (b) Are your parents still working? (c) Ma Lan is having her breakfast. (d) Wang Lin works at the Beijing Hotel.

Exercise 7

(a) Lǎo Wǎng yǒu jī gěi hǎizi? (b) Nǐ zài Běijīng Fǎdiǎn zhǔ le jǐ tiān? (c) Tā hé le jī bēi kāfēi? (d) Lǐ Píng yǒu jī gēge?

Exercise 8

(a) Nǐ yǒu shíjiān qù yóuyǒng ma? (b) Duìbùqí, wǒ méi yǒu shíjiān. (c) Nǐ gàn shénme gōngzuò? (d) Qǐng wěn nǐ fūmǔ hǎo.

Exercise 9

(a) [no measure word needed]; (b) ge; (c) jiā / ge; (d) ge; (e) běi.

Exercise 10

(a) Wǒ hěn xǐhuān wǒde gōngzuò. (b) Wǒ xiǎng qù kàn wǒ fūmǔ. (c) Tā hù lái kàn wǒ ma? (d) Fāng Shū zài Běijīng Lǚyóu Jū gōngzuò. (e) Nǐ zhù zāi nár?

Exercise 11

(a) Wǒ xiǎng qù Zhōngguó.

(b) Tā xiǎng qù nǎr?

Reading/listening comprehension questions

A Gu Liang is a translator/interpreter. B Gu Liang is working for Beijing Silk Trading Company. C Yang Ning has got married. D Yang Ning’s wife is a primary-school teacher. E Gu Liang is going to meet Yang Ning’s wife tomorrow night at Yang Ning’s home.
Lesson 6

Exercise 1
(a) Jintian shi xingqiu. (b) Jintian shi xingqi. (c) Jintian shi liuyue ju hao. (d) Wo qi hao qu Zhongguo. (e) Wo mai xingqi yi lai Taiwan.

Exercise 2
(a) san tian [no measure word] (Xiao Fang stayed in Shenzhen for three days.) (b) san ge yue (I’ve got three months.) (c) liang ge xingqi / liang xingqi (My husband wants to travel in China for two weeks.) (d) si nian [no measure word] (My younger brother worked in Xi’an for four years.) (e) wu ge gege (Wang Dongping has five elder brothers.) (f) baiyu [no measure word] (Paul wants to go to Taiwan in August.)

Exercise 3
(a) Feixia zai Guangzhou zu le ji nian? (b) Mingtian shi xingqi si. (c) Andrew xue le ji ge yue Zhongwen? (d) Wo xiang jin nian san yue qu Zhongguo. (e) Xia ge xingqiwu shi ji hao? (f) Wo zhangfu (or airen) you liang ge dici yi ge jiye.

Exercise 4
(a) wo zu shao de pengyou; (b) tedian da de youying chi / feichang da de youying chi; (c) Xiao canting / Xiao Fandian; (d) na ge niangqing he pao liang de da xuesheng; (e) zui liao de nian ren.

Exercise 5
(a) Mick dasuan shenme shihou qu Zhongguo? (When is Mick going to China?) (b) Zhang Jun zai Taiwan gongzu le duojia? (For how long did Zhang Jun work in Taiwan?) (c) Lao Li de nu'er shenme shihou shangxue? (When is Lao Li’s daughter starting school?) (d) Ni xiang zai Shanghai dai duojia? (For how long do you want to stay in Shanghai?)

Exercise 6
(a) zuoyou; (b) dayue; (c) zuoyou; (d) dayue.

Exercise 7
(a) Ni xiang shiji er di an hai shi yi diao chi wufan? (b) Ni chang youxiong ma? / Ni changchang youxiong ma? (c) Ni zhe me bu gaoxing? / Ni weshenme bu gaoxing? (d) Jiran ni bu e, wo jiu xian chi.

Exercise 8
For your reference only:

Reading/listening comprehension questions
2 Tones (a) yiyou (first, fourth); (b) san ge ye (first, neutral, fourth); (c) tedian da de tandian (fourth, second, neutral, fourth); (d) xingqi'er (first, first, fourth).

Lesson 7

Exercise 1
(a) Pingguo liang kuai qi mao wu yi jin. (b) Buluo liu kuai yi jin. (c) Xiangjiao si kuai liu mao wu yi jin. (d) Cao mei san kuai yi mao yi jin. (e) Li zi liang kuai ling wu yi jin. (f) Wu kuai yi mao jiu yi jin.

Exercise 2
(a) Yao; (b) xiang / yao; (c) Yao; (d) xiang / yao.

Exercise 3
(a) Wo xiang mai yi xi Hei nan Dao xiangjiao. (b) Ta bu yao caomei. (c) Wo mai le liang jin pingguo (d) Ni hai yao bide ma? (e) Wo bu zhidao zhe ge duoy shao qian. (f) A: Gei ni wu kuai. B: Zhao ni liang mao wu.
Exercise 4

(a) Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yī tiáo zhēn sī lǐngdài. / Wǒ yào... (b) Wǒ xiǎng mǎi liǎng jīn xiǎngjiào. / Wǒ yào... (c) Wǒ xiǎng mǎi liǎng tiáo wéijīn. / Wǒ yào...

Exercise 5

(a) Nǐ kěyì dài wǒ qu bǎihuò shāngdiàn ma? (b) Nǐ kěyì dài wǒ qu yǐnháng ma? (c) Nǐ kěyì dài wǒ qu yóujú ma?

Exercise 6

(a) Tài guì le. Wǒ bù yào. (b) Wǒ yào le. (c) Xiǎojie, yǒu liǎng zì ma? (d) Nǐ tài hào le. Duō xiè.

Exercise 7

(a) gěi tā dà yī pèngyou (He bought a pure silk scarf for his girlfriend.) (b) mǎi yì xiě dōngxi (I should go to the department store and do some shopping.) (c) suǒyuè de yǐnháng (All the banks are open on Sundays.) (d) jǐ běi (Xiao Wang has had several cups of coffee.) (e) dàí wǒ māma lái (My elder brother will bring my mother over to see us.)

Reading/listening comprehension questions

A a night gown; B a hundred and eighty-five yuan; C very nice and not expensive; D several table cloths.

Lesson 8

Exercise 1

(a) Zhōngguó bǐ Méiguó dà. / Méiguó bǐ Zhōngguó xiǎo. (b) Bōluó bǐ píngguǒ guì. (c) John bǐ Wáng Lín gào. (d) Zhè ge yóuyòng chí bì nà ge yóuyòng chí dà. (e) Rachel bǐ Línlin dà. / Línlin bǐ Rachel niǎnqīng. / Línlin bǐ Rachel xiǎo.

Exercise 2

For your reference only:

(a) Wǒ zuì xǐhuān lán yǎnsè. (I like the blue colour most.) (b) Wǒ bǐjiào xǐhuān Zhōngguó fàn. (I quite like Chinese food.) (c) Zhōngwén bǐ Fǎwén nán. (Chinese is more difficult than French.) (d) Shì de. (Yes, it is.)

Exercise 3

(a) with 4 lán tiān (blue sky); (b) with 1 or 3 lù píngguǒ; lù chá; (c) with 2 huáng xiǎngjiào; (d) with 1 or 3 hóng píngguǒ; hóng chá (black tea).

Exercise 4

(a) Nǐ kěyǐ jǐ geí wǒ liǎng gé píngguǒ ma? (b) Tā bù xǐhuān jǐ geí péngyou qián. (c) Tā shénme shìfù huán geí wǒ qián? / Tā shénme shìfù huán wǒ qián? (d) Wǒ wàng le dài qián bāo. (e) Xiè xiè nǐ dài lái yī xiē Zhōngguó chá. (f) Tā dài māo yī le ma? (g) Liú Hóng kǎnshāngqu bǐ Paul niáncīng. / Liú Hóng bǐ Paul kǎnshāngqu niáncīng.

Exercise 5

(a) shàng; (b) guàng; (c) qù; (d) shàng.

Exercise 6

(a) Duìbùqǐ. Wǒ chī dào le. (b) Méi wènti. (c) Zhōngwén zěnmé shuō ‘good bargain’? (d) Wǒ míngtiān yídīng huán gěi nǐ qián.

Exercise 7

(a) Zhè tiáo lǐngdài hán bǎifēnzhī wǔshí fēn. (This tie contains 50 per cent silk.) (b) Wǒ guǎng le guǎng shāngdiàn. (I had a look around in the shops.) (c) Táng Bin jǐ geí le wǒ ěrshí kuài qián. (Tang Bin lent me twenty yuan.) (d) Tā jǐntiān zhiyì guóchǎn chī dào le ěrshí fénzhōng. (She was twenty minutes late this morning.)

Exercise 8

(a) gòu; (b) zǔguò de; (c) A: gòu; B: gòu; (d) zǔguò de.
Exercise 11

我喜欢学中文。

Reading/listening comprehension questions

A (b); B (c); C (a); D (b); E (c); F (b); G (a).

Lesson 9

Exercise 1

(a) Wǒ yào yī bǐ chénzǐ zhī. (b) Wǒ yào yī pǐ jiǔ. (c) Wǒ yào liǎng bǐ bái pǔtao jiǔ. (d) Wǒ yào yī xiè Zhōngguó chà.

Exercise 2

For your reference only:
Wǒ yào yī ge hūntūn tāng, yī ge yù tòu shāo dòufu hé yī ge jīdān cháo fàn.

Exercise 3

(a) Qǐng zuò. (b) Wǒ xiàng kàn kān cài dān. / Wǒ xiàng kàn yī xià cài dān. / Wǒ kě yǐ kàn yī xià cài dān ma? (c) Qǐng gēng wǒ lái. (d) Wǒ è sǐ le. (e) Qǐng shǎo dèng. / Dèng yī xī. / Dèngdēng.
Reading/listening comprehension questions


Lesson 10

Exercise 1

(a) Qing wèn, cèsuǒ zài nǎr? (b) Qing wèn, fūjīn yòu gōnggōng diānhuà ma? (c) Qing wèn, shì lù chē zài nǎr? (d) Qing wèn, qù huǒchē zhàn zěnme zǒu? (e) Qing wèn, qù Běijīng Fǎndiàn zuò jǐ lù chē?

Exercise 2

(a) Lào Zhāng zài Maria de zuò biān. (b) Maria zài Lào Zhāng de yòu biān. (c) Linda zài Xiāo Fāng de zuò biān.

Exercise 3

I. (a) Cèsuǒ zài gōnggōng diānhuà de zuò biān. (b) Gōnggōng diānhuà zài cèsuǒ de yòu biān. (c) Cāntīng zài gōnggōng diānhuà de yòu biān.
II. (a) Dì ěr ge hónglùdēng wǎng zuò guǎi, zài wǎng yòu guǎi. (b) Dì ěr ge hónglùdēng wǎng yòu guǎi.

Exercise 4

(a) Tā bù jìde wǒde mínzì. (He doesn't remember my name.) (b) Nǐ bù yòng gěi wǒ mǎi liwù. (You don't need to buy me any presents.) (c) Fūjīn měi yòu bāihuò shāngdiàn. (There's no department store near by.) (d) Wǒ měi kàn jiàn huǒchē zhàn. (I didn't see the railway station.) (e) Wǒ kàn bù jīn hónglùdēng. (I can't see the traffic lights.)

Exercise 5

1 Nàr yòu yī ge yòu jū. 2 Tā hul shuò Zhōngwén. 3 Wǒ bù néng gāosù nǐ tāde qǐngkuāng. 4 Dì yī ge lùkǒu wǎng yòu guǎi. Shìwǔ fēnzhōng jiù dào le.

Exercise 6

(a) Qing wèn, qǐ zìxǐngchē qù Zhōngshān Dàxué xùyào duō jiǔ? (b) Qing wèn, zǒu lù qù huǒchē zhàn xùyào duō jiǔ? (c) Qing wèn, zuò chē qù Tiān'ānmén xùyào duō jiǔ?

Exercise 7

(a) borrow; (b) lend; (c) borrow; (d) lend.

Exercise 8

(a) Wǒ bù xīn (or bù xiǎngxīn) nǐ méi yǒu zìxǐngchē. (b) Xià ge xīngqīliù wǒ yào qù Shānghǎi. (c) Frank měi zhào dào Zhōngshān Dàxué. (d) Nǐ zúhuāo chà yǐxià dìtú. (e) Qǐ zìxǐngchē dào wǒde dàxué yào yǐ ge duō xiǎoshí. (f) Zhè shì yī ge hǎo zhúyì.

Exercise 9

1 (f); 2 (b); 3 (d); 4 (c); 5 (a); 6 (c).

Reading/listening comprehension questions

1 A (c); B (b); C (a); D (b); E (c).

2 Tones (a) Qing zuò. (third, fourth); (b) È sī le. (fourth, third, neutral); (c) yòu kōng (third, fourth); (d) chí de kuài (first, neutral, fourth); (e) nàr (fourth, neutral); (f) Wǒ bù xīn. (third, second, fourth).

Lesson 11

Exercise 1

(a) Wǒ měi sān zhāng qù dōngwúyuán de piào. (I'll buy three tickets for the zoo.) (b) Nà ge gǎng dào de nánhái shì Lào Liú de érzi. (The boy who has just arrived is Lào Liú's son.) (c) Wàng jīnglí bù xīhuàn nàxiē chángchāng chí dào de rén. (Manager Wang doesn't like those who are always late.)
Exercise 2

(a) tiáo; (b) zhǎng; (c) liǎng; (d) píng.

Exercise 3

(a) Zāogāo! Wǒ zuò cuò chè le. (b) Zāogāo! Wǒ diǎn cuò cái le. (c) Zāogāo! Wǒ jiào cuò tài dé míngzì le. (d) Zāogāo! Wǒ mǎi cuò kāfēi le.

Exercise 4

(a) Bié jí. (b) Bié zuò gōnggōng qìché. (c) Bié gāosu Lǎo Wáng wǒ duō dà le. (d) Bié shuō Yingwén. (e) Bié jiè gěi Liú Hóng nǐ de zìxìngché.

Exercise 5

(a) Xià yí zhàn shì dōngwùyuán. (b) Wǒ bù zhídào nǐ xià liáng ge xǐngqǐ yào chūmén. (c) Nǐ xiàyāo xià yí zhàn xià ché. Kuài shǐ’ér lù gōnggōng qìché. (d) Zhè ge fàndiàn yǒu rén jiào Kān Jiā ma? (e) Duìbùqǐ, wǒ méi fǎn qīng. (f) Qǐng màn yìdiǎn shuò.

Exercise 6

(a) Wǒ xiàng mǎi liàng zhǎng qù Běijīng de piào. (b) Wǒ xiàng mǎi yī zhǎng sānyuè bā hào qù Shānghǎi de piào. (c) Wǒ xiàng mǎi săn zhǎng qù Gǔlín de yìngwò. (d) Wǒ xiàng mǎi liàng zhǎng ěrshǐliù cì lièché de piào.

Exercise 7

(a) Qíngdào pǐjiǔ bì Běijīng pǐjiǔ guì liù máo. Běijīng pǐjiǔ bì Qíngdào pǐjiǔ piányí liù máo. Běijīng pǐjiǔ méiyou Qíngdào pǐjiǔ guì. (b) Xiǎoměi bǐ Andrew dà yí suì. Andrew bì Xiǎoměi xiǎo yí suì. Andrew méi Xiǎoměi dā. (c) Lǎo Wáng juéde Zhōngguó fān bǐ xiǎncán hǎochī. Lǎo Wáng juéde xiǎncán méi Zhōngguó fān hǎochī. (d) Běijīng de xiàtiān bǐ Lúnđùn de xiàtiān rè. Lúnđùn de xiàtiān méi Běijīng de xiàtiān rè.

Exercise 8

(a) Huòché dì èr tiān shíshān diǎn líng wǔ fēn dào Gǔlín. (b) Wǒ xīngqí wǔ zōu, jiǔ shí sānyuè ërshíwǔ hào. (c) Wǒde fúmù shèntí bù cuō. (d) Liūshíqì cì ché ji jiān fāché?

Exercise 9

For your reference only:

好看; 好吃; 好人; 买票

Reading/listening comprehension questions


2 (a) true; (b) false; (c) false; (d) true.

Lesson 12

Exercise 1

(a) Dān jiān dài wèishēng jiàn bāshíwǔ yuán yī tiān. (b) Shuāng jiān dài wèishēng jiàn yī bāi bāshíwǔ yuán yī tiān. (c) Dān jiān bù dài wèishēng jiàn wǔshíwǔ yuán yī tiān.

Exercise 2

(a) Wǒ yào yī jiān dān jiān dài wèishēng jiàn. (b) Wǒ yào yī jiān shuāng jiān dài wèishēng jiàn. (c) Wǒ yào yī jiān dān jiān, zhū sān tiān.

Exercise 3

(a) Nǐmen yǒu kǒng fāngjiān ma? (b) Wǒde fāngjiān bù dài diànhuà. Wǒde fāngjiān méi yǒu diànhuà. (c) Nǐde fāngjiān zài sì cèng. (d) Zuò biàn dì sān liàng zìxíngché shì wǒde.
Exercise 4

(a) diànhéng; (b) chúlì; (c) fándiàn; (d) Shénme shǐhou?

Exercise 5

(a) 3 xiūdiànhéng; (b) 1 chúlì zhè jiàn shì; (c) 5 yǒu kòng fángjiān; (d) 2 mái liwū; (e) 6 kàn péngyou; (f) 4 dēng gōnggōng qíché.

Exercise 6

(a) Wǒde fángjiān li yǒu ge diànhéng huái le. / Wǒde fángjiān li de diànhéng huái le. (b) Gēbi fángjiān hěn chāo. / Gēbi de rěn hěn chǎo. (c) Wǒde fángjiān hěn lěng.

Exercise 7

(a) Zēn báqiàn. (b) Lǎoshǐ shuō . . . (c) Nǐ shui de hǎo ma? (d) Kàn qíngkuàng. (e) Sīfāng ràng wǒ gāosu nǐ tài xià ge xīnxíng jǐ zǒu. (f) Wǒde qiánbāo li měi yǒu qián. (g) A: Hái yǒu báode wéntí ma? B: Zǎnshǐ měi yǒu.

Exercise 8

For your reference only:
(a) Zuòtiān wǒde fángjiān hěn lěng. (b) Zuòwān, wǒ bù xiǎng chuānén. (c) Zuòwān, gēbi hěn chǎo. (d) Wǒde fángjiān měi yǒu wěishēng jiān.

Reading comprehension questions

The odd words or phrases are in italics and the words or phrases that replace them are in the parentheses. If a word/phrase needs crossing out, it is indicated in the parentheses.

RECEPTIONIST: Nǐ hào.
EMILY: Xiēxiē (Nǐ hǎo). Nǐmen yǒu kòng fángjiān ma?
RECEPTIONIST: Yào kàn qíngkuàng. Nǐ yào wěishēng jiān (dān jiān) háishi shuāng jiān?
EMILY: Yào dān jiān. Dān jiān dàiyǒuyōng chí (wěishēng jiān) ma?
RECEPTIONIST: Dāngrán dài. Nǐ dāsuàn zhù jǐ tiān?
EMILY: Liáng ge tiān. (cross out 'ge')

Lesson 13

Exercise 1


Exercise 2

(a) Sīfāng shì cóng Xīnjiāpòláí de Zhōngguórén. (b) Linda shì xué Zhōngwén dé hǎi xuèshēng. (c) Wǒde Zhōngwén láoshi shì cóng Zhōngguó dàlǐ lái de Zhōngguórén.

Exercise 3

(a) Dāidá shì shénme shǐhou zǒu de? (b) Jīntiān zàoshāng, wǒ shì qǐ zìxíngchē lǎi shāng bān de. (c) Shénme shǐhou dòu xǐng. Nǐ juédìng. (d) Tā shénme shǐhou dòu bù xīhuàn zuò gōnggōng qíché. (e) Nǐ kěyì lái jié wǒ ma? (f) Wōmen jǐ diǎn zài shénme diāng jiànmiàn?

Exercise 4

(a) Nǐ zuòtiān jǐ diǎn xià bān de? / Nǐ zuòtiān shì jǐ diǎn xià bān de? (b) Nǐ zuòtiān shì zěnmé qù shāng bān de? / Nǐ zuòtiān zěnmé qù shāng bān de? (c) Nǐ mèimeì shì zuòtiān wǎngshāng lái de ma? (d) Nǐ mèimeì shì shénme shǐhou kāishi xué Yīngwén de?

Exercise 5

For your reference only:
(a) Zhōngwén bù hǎo xué. (It's not easy to learn Chinese.) (b) Shānghǎi huóchē zhàn bù hǎo zhào. (It's not easy to find Shanghai railway station.) (c) Guǎngdōnghuà bù hǎo dōng. (It's not easy to understand Canton dialect.)
Exercise 6
(a) Wǒ jiéjie shì dàoyóu. (b) Wǒmen jīnglǐ de bàngōngshì zài èr céng. (c) [cannot omit]; (d) Tā fùmùde jiā hěn piàoliang. (e) [cannot omit].

Exercise 7
(a) gěi; (b) gěi; (c) tóng; (d) gěi; (e) tóng.

Exercise 8
(a) Nǐ chī wǎn wǎnfàn le ma? (Have you finished with your supper?) (b) Tā yōng wǎn diànhuà le. (She has finished with the phone.) (c) Tā diàn wǎn cài le. (He has finished ordering the dishes.) (d) Xiǎo Lín xǐu wǎn diàndēng le. (Xiao Li has finished repairing the light.)

Exercise 9
(a) Zài Yíngguó, dǎ diànhuà hěn gūi. (b) Nǐde diànhuà hàomǎ shì shénme? (c) Zhuòwán, nǐ bābā gěi nǐ dà diànhuà le. (d) Nǐ jiā yǒu diànhuà ma?

Exercise 10
(a) David wǎng le gěi láobàn dǎ diànhuà. (David forgot to phone the boss.) (b) Nǐ kěyǐ gàosu wǒ nǐde diànhuà hàomǎ ma? (Could you tell me your telephone number?) (c) Tā jǐntiān bù zài bàngōngshì. (She is not in the office today.)

Exercise 11
(a) ii); I went to visit some friends yesterday. (b) i); I lived in Beijing for 10 years. (c) ii); My younger brother can speak Japanese.

Exercise 12
Question 1: Zhangwen is phoning his teacher, Mr. Li.
Question 2: He's gone to the bank.
Question 3: About six o'clock.

Reading/listening comprehension questions

Lesson 14

Exercise 1
(a) Zuòtiān wǒ bābā gěi wǒ dà diànhuà le. (My father phoned me yesterday.) (b) Nǐ kàn. Xiàxuě le. (Look, it's snowing.) (c) Rúguò tā mǐntiān hǎi bù dào, wǒ jiù zǒu le. (If he does not arrive tomorrow, I'm leaving.) (d) Sān tiān qián, tā chǐ dào le bān ge xiǎoshí. (Three days ago, he was half an hour late.) (e) Wǒ bù xiǎng qù dōngwùyuán. Wǒ lèi le. (I don't want to go to the zoo. I'm getting tired.) (f) Zhème shuō, nǐ shì Fěixiá le? (In that case, you are Feixia, aren't you?)

Exercise 2
(a) dì èr cì; (b) liàng cì; (c) liàng cì; (d) liàng cì; (e) dì èr cì.

Exercise 3
(a) qù; (b) qu; (c) lái; (d) qù; (e) lāi.

Exercise 4
(a) Měitiān zǎoshang, wǒ bā diǎn qù shāng bān. (b) Měi ge rèn dōu xǐhuān tā. (c) Liǎng nián qián, wǒ rènshì le tā. (d) Qù nián, tā qù le Xiǎng Gǎng liǎng cì. (e) Měi liǎng cì xǐngqǐ, wǒ gěi wǒ fūmǔ dǎ yī cì diànhuà. (f) Tā yào qù tā fūmǔ jiā guò chūnjīě.

Exercise 5
(a) Qǐng jīn, qǐng jīn. / Kuài jīn lái. (b) Zuò, zuò. (c) Nǐmen xiāng hé shénme? (d) Wǒ qu Lǎo Lǐ jiā zuòzuo. (e) Chī, chī. Bìe kēqi.

Exercise 6
(a) Nǐ juéde Méiguó zěnmé yàng? (b) Xiǎng Gǎng de xītiān zěnmé yàng? (c) Běijīng fǎndiàn zěnmé yàng? (d) Dāngdǐ rèn zěnmé yàng? (e) David de Zhōngwén zěnmé yàng?
Exercise 7

(a) Wǒ yè bù xǐhuan Zhōngguó fàn. (b) Tā māma yè mèi qù cānjǐa
Alǐn de húnlǐ. (c) Tā yè bù zhídào yóuyōng chī jǐ diăn kāimén.
(d) Xiǎo Zhāng yè mèi chī dào.

Exercise 8

(a) Tōng dàngdài rén tánhuà hěn yōu yísi. (b) Nǐ qu le nǎ jǐ ge chéngshì? (c) Nǐde Táiwān zhī xìng zěnmé yāng? (d) Guǎngzhōu de rén tài duō. Hěn chāo, xiàtiān hěn rě.

Reading/listening comprehension questions

1. A Táiwān, B Cānjǐa le, C Bù shì, shì dǐ yì cí. Đ Gǔlín. Tamen qu le liàng ge xīngqì.
2. Tones: (a) wǒmén de húnlǐ (third, second, neutral, first, third); (b) gàosu wǒ nǐde Zhōngguó zhī xìng (fourth, neutral, third, third, neutral, first, second, first, second); (c) qīng le xǔduō péngyou (third, neutral, third, first, second, neutral).

Lesson 15

Exercise 1

Check your letter with a Chinese speaker if you can find one. Otherwise, go back to the book and check the letter yourself by going through the vocabulary and the language points.

Exercise 2

to: People's Republic of China

Yóubiān: 710061
Xiān Chāng Ān Jiē 6 Hào 46 Dòng 3 Hào

Huáng Wéiéi

Shǒu

126 SE, 42 Place, Bellevue, WA 98006, USA

Exercise 3

(a) xīn/láixīn; (b) láixīn/xīn; (c) xīn; (d) qūxīn/xīn.

Exercise 4

(a) with 2 qù nián; (b) with 3 or 4 shàng ge xīngqì / shàng ge yuè;
(c) with 1 or 2 míngtiān / míng nián; (d) with 3 or 4 xià ge xīngqì / xià ge yuè; (e) with 1 zuòtiān.

Exercise 5

(a) Nǐde jià hěn piàoliang, jiù shì bù hǎo zhǎo. (b) Zuówàn wǒ yǐzhí zài jià xiě xīn. (c) Wǒ xīhuan gěi hǎo péngyou xiě xīn. (d) Biě shēngqì. (e) Xiǎ bān hòu, wǒ qu le ziyōu shíchǎng. (f) Wǒmén de lǎobān mǎng zhe dǎ diānhuà. (g) Wǒ zuòtiān cái shōu dào wǒ fùmǔ de xīn. (h) Zǎi Zhōngguó de shíhòu, wǒ chángcháng qǐ zìxíngché. (i) Tā yǐdīng hùi zài xià ge xīngqì yī zhī qián huán gēi nǐ bà běn shū de.

Reading/listening comprehension questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>不好找</td>
<td>not easy to find</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>不见</td>
<td>no see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>不客气</td>
<td>you are welcome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>不用</td>
<td>no need/do not need</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>不过</td>
<td>however/but</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>猜</td>
<td>to guess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>才</td>
<td>[emphatic word]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>菜单</td>
<td>menu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>餐馆</td>
<td>restaurant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>参加</td>
<td>to attend/to take part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>餐厅</td>
<td>restaurant/dining-room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>草莓</td>
<td>strawberry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>层</td>
<td>floor/layer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>厕所</td>
<td>toilet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>茶</td>
<td>tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>查</td>
<td>to check</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>常</td>
<td>often/always/frequently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>尝</td>
<td>to taste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>长</td>
<td>long/to be long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>长城</td>
<td>the Great Wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>吵</td>
<td>to be noisy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>炒</td>
<td>to stir-fry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>车</td>
<td>car/bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>乘</td>
<td>to take/to catch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>成功</td>
<td>to be successful/success</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>城市</td>
<td>city</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>橙子汁</td>
<td>orange juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>吃</td>
<td>to eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>迟</td>
<td>late/to be late</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>抽空</td>
<td>to make time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>穿</td>
<td>to wear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>处理</td>
<td>to see to/to handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>出门</td>
<td>to be away/to go away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>纯毛</td>
<td>pure wool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>春节</td>
<td>Chinese New Year [lit. ‘spring festival’]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>春天</td>
<td>spring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>次</td>
<td>number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>从...到...</td>
<td>from ... to ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>从...来...</td>
<td>to come from ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>错</td>
<td>wrongly/to be wrong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>大</td>
<td>big/large/old</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>大大</td>
<td>to be big/to be large/to be old</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pinyin</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dà de</td>
<td>大的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dā diànhuà</td>
<td>打电话</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dà xuéshēng</td>
<td>大学生</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dài</td>
<td>带</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dài (qu)</td>
<td>带(去)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dài lái</td>
<td>带(来)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dài jìe</td>
<td>大街</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāng</td>
<td>当</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāngdī</td>
<td>当地</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāngrán</td>
<td>当然</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dānrén</td>
<td>单人</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dānshì</td>
<td>但是</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dào</td>
<td>到</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dào chí you</td>
<td>到导游</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāoyóu</td>
<td>打算</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàxià</td>
<td>大虾</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàxué</td>
<td>大学</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàyuē</td>
<td>大约</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de</td>
<td>的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de shíhou</td>
<td>的时候</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>déi</td>
<td>得</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dì</td>
<td>迪</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dì èr tiān</td>
<td>第二天</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dì yì</td>
<td>第一</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dì yì cì</td>
<td>第一次</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dián</td>
<td>点</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dián cài</td>
<td>点菜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diànchē</td>
<td>电车</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diàndēng</td>
<td>电灯</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diànhuà</td>
<td>电话</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diàn(l)</td>
<td>点儿</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ditú</td>
<td>地图</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dòng</td>
<td>懂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dòng dòng</td>
<td>条</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dòng xi</td>
<td>东西</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dōng Zhī Mén Wài</td>
<td>东直门外</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dòngtiān</td>
<td>冬天</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dòngwúyuán</td>
<td>动物园</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dōngxi</td>
<td>东西</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dōu</td>
<td>都</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dōu</td>
<td>都</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dùn</td>
<td>豆腐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duì</td>
<td>对</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duì le</td>
<td>对了</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duì bù qǐ</td>
<td>对不起</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duō</td>
<td>多</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duō</td>
<td>多</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duō</td>
<td>多</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duō jǐu</td>
<td>多久</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duō shǎo</td>
<td>多少</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duō shǎo qián?</td>
<td>多少钱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duō xiè</td>
<td>多谢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>è</td>
<td>饿</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>è sì le</td>
<td>饿死了</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ěrshíyī</td>
<td>儿十一</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ěrshí</td>
<td>儿十</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>érzi</td>
<td>儿子</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāchē</td>
<td>发车</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fǎn diàn</td>
<td>餐店</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāng jiān</td>
<td>房间</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēichāng/tèbié</td>
<td>非常/特别</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēn</td>
<td>分</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēn</td>
<td>分</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fén</td>
<td>分</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fèng</td>
<td>封</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēng jǐng</td>
<td>风景</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēn jí</td>
<td>分机</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēn zhōng</td>
<td>分钟</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fū</td>
<td>副</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fù jīn</td>
<td>附近</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fù mǔ</td>
<td>父母</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gàn</td>
<td>干</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāng</td>
<td>刚</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāng hào</td>
<td>刚好</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gào su</td>
<td>告诉</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāo xìng</td>
<td>高兴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ge</td>
<td>种</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gē bǐ</td>
<td>哥哥</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>géi</td>
<td>给</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
給你  hedge you are
跟你  to follow
公司  company
公用  public
工作  work/to work
够  to be enough
溜  to look around
管理  management/to manage
关门  to be closed/to close
贵  to be expensive
过  to celebrate/to spend
国家  country
过 [grammar word]
过奖  I'm flattered
还好  still/also
还  to be all right
海南岛  Hainan Island
还是  or [question word]
海鲜  seafood
孩子  children
含  to contain
好  good/fine/well
好  to be good/to be well/to be fine
好  very
号码  date
号  number
好吧  alright/fine
好不好  Is it alright/fine?
好友  good friend
好主意  good idea
好吃  tasty
好看  to be nice/to be good-looking
号码  number
和  and
喝  to drink
很  very
很  very much
很多  many/much/a lot
合算  good bargain
红绿灯  traffic light
后  after/in/... later
坏  to have broken/does not work

還  to change
还  to return
黄  yellow
欢迎  to welcome
会  can/to be able to
会  will
会... 的  to answer
回答  to answer
见  see you later
回来  to return
婚礼  wedding
火车票  train ticket
火车站  railway station
几  how many?
几  hurry/to be urgent/urgent
几  chicken
几  several
几刀  diced chicken
急事  urgent matter
家  [measure word]
家  home/family
加  plus
件  [measure word for clothes]
间  [measure word for rooms]
件  [measure word for matters]
见到  to meet
酱  sauce
讲话  to tell
见面  to meet
叫  to call/to be called
记得  to remember
激动  to be excited/exciting
挨  to collect/to meet [somebody]
借  to lend
借  to borrow
结婚  to be married
介绍  to introduce
几乎  almost
季节  season
斤  half a kilo
今年  this year
进去  to go in/to go into
经理  manager
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese Characters</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shòupiān chù</td>
<td>shòuí</td>
<td>ticket office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shù</td>
<td>shù</td>
<td>book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuài</td>
<td>shuài</td>
<td>to be smart/smart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuāngrén</td>
<td>shuāngrén</td>
<td>double</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shūdiàn</td>
<td>shūdiàn</td>
<td>bookshop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shūfu</td>
<td>shūfu</td>
<td>comfortable/to be comfortable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuíguǒ</td>
<td>shuíguǒ</td>
<td>fruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuìjiào</td>
<td>shuìjiào</td>
<td>to sleep/sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuǐnì</td>
<td>shuǐnì</td>
<td>to be smooth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuō</td>
<td>shuō</td>
<td>to speak/to say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuōlái huà cháng</td>
<td>shuōlái huà cháng</td>
<td>it's a long story</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuōqi</td>
<td>shuōqi</td>
<td>to mention/to talk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuōqì</td>
<td>shuōqì</td>
<td>talking about/to talk about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sīchóu</td>
<td>sīchóu</td>
<td>silk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suānlà</td>
<td>suānlà</td>
<td>hot and sour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sui</td>
<td>sui</td>
<td>years old</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suóyóude</td>
<td>suóyóude</td>
<td>all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā</td>
<td>tā</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tài ... le</td>
<td>tài ... le</td>
<td>extremely/very much/too</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tài bāng le!</td>
<td>tài bāng le!</td>
<td>Superb!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tài hào le</td>
<td>tài hào le</td>
<td>wonderful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tài tāi</td>
<td>tài tāi</td>
<td>wife/Mrs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāmen</td>
<td>tāmen</td>
<td>they/them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāmen</td>
<td>tāmen</td>
<td>they (inanimate objects)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tán</td>
<td>tán</td>
<td>to talk/to chat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāng</td>
<td>tāng</td>
<td>soup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāngcì</td>
<td>tāngcì</td>
<td>sweet and sour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tánhuà</td>
<td>tánhuà</td>
<td>to talk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>táozi</td>
<td>táozi</td>
<td>peach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tèbíé</td>
<td>tèbíé</td>
<td>extremely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiān</td>
<td>tiān</td>
<td>very</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiáo</td>
<td>tiáo</td>
<td>[measure word]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tíng</td>
<td>tíng</td>
<td>to listen to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tíng hào</td>
<td>tíng hào</td>
<td>to listen carefully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tíngshōu</td>
<td>tíngshōu</td>
<td>to have heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tóng</td>
<td>tóng</td>
<td>with/and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tóngxué</td>
<td>tóngxué</td>
<td>classmate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuixiū</td>
<td>tuixiū</td>
<td>to be retired/retired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wān</td>
<td>wān</td>
<td>[the completion of an action]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wàng</td>
<td>wàng</td>
<td>to forget</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wàng ... guāi</td>
<td>wàng ... guāi</td>
<td>to turn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wānshang</td>
<td>wānshang</td>
<td>evening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wèi</td>
<td>wèi</td>
<td>hello [only used on the telephone]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wèi</td>
<td>wèi</td>
<td>scarf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wèijín</td>
<td>wèijín</td>
<td>bathroom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wèishéng jiàn</td>
<td>wèishéng jiàn</td>
<td>why</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wèishénme</td>
<td>wèishénme</td>
<td>to ask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wèn</td>
<td>wèn</td>
<td>problem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wèn tì</td>
<td>wèn tì</td>
<td>I/me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wǒ</td>
<td>wǒ</td>
<td>I think ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wǒ men</td>
<td>wǒ men</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wǒmén de</td>
<td>wǒmén de</td>
<td>our/ours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wūfàn</td>
<td>wūfàn</td>
<td>lunch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xià bān</td>
<td>xià bān</td>
<td>to finish work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xià chè</td>
<td>xià chè</td>
<td>to get off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xià cì</td>
<td>xià cì</td>
<td>next time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xià ge</td>
<td>xià ge</td>
<td>next</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xià yì zhàn</td>
<td>xià yì zhàn</td>
<td>next stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiàn</td>
<td>xiàn</td>
<td>first of all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiàng</td>
<td>xiàng</td>
<td>to think</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiàng (+ verb)</td>
<td>xiàng (+ verb)</td>
<td>would like/want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiāngjiāo</td>
<td>xiāngjiāo</td>
<td>banana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiàngxìn</td>
<td>xiàngxìn</td>
<td>to believe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiānshēng</td>
<td>xiānshēng</td>
<td>Mr/husband</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎnzuì</td>
<td>xiǎnzuì</td>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎo</td>
<td>xiǎo</td>
<td>little/small/young</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎo</td>
<td>xiǎo</td>
<td>to be little/to be small/to be young</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎo lóng</td>
<td>xiǎo lóng</td>
<td>small steam-container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎohāi</td>
<td>xiǎohāi</td>
<td>small children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎojíe</td>
<td>xiǎojíe</td>
<td>Miss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎoshí</td>
<td>xiǎoshí</td>
<td>hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiàtiān</td>
<td>xiàtiān</td>
<td>summer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiàwǔ</td>
<td>xiàwǔ</td>
<td>afternoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiàxuě</td>
<td>xiàxuě</td>
<td>to snow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiàyú</td>
<td>xiàyú</td>
<td>to rain/raining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiě</td>
<td>xiě</td>
<td>to write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xièxié</td>
<td>xièxié</td>
<td>thank you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xìhuan</td>
<td>xìhuan</td>
<td>to like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xìn</td>
<td>xìn</td>
<td>letter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xín</td>
<td>xín</td>
<td>new/to be new</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xíng</td>
<td>xíng</td>
<td>to be OK/can do/will do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xíngma?</td>
<td>xíngma?</td>
<td>Is it OK?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xíngqí</td>
<td>xíngqí</td>
<td>week</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
yòu yìsì 有意思 to be interesting
yóubìān 邮编 postcode
yóuhǎo 友好 to be friendly/friendly
yóujiǔ 邮局 post-office
yóuyǒng 游泳 to swim
yóuyǒng chí 游泳池 swimming pool
yú 鱼 fish
yuè 月 month
zài 再 in/at/in
zài 再 again
zài 再 once again
zài ... zhì qián 在...之前 before.../by...
záijiàn 再见 goodbye
zánmen 咱们 we [colloquial term]
zànshí 暂时 at the moment/temporarily
zǎo 早 early
zǎofàn 早饭 breakfast
záogāo 招糕 morning
záoshāng 早上 morning
zēnmé 怎么 how
zēnmé 怎么 why
Zēnmé huí shí? 怎么回事？What's the matter?
Zēnmé yàng? 怎么样？ How are you?/How are things?
Zēnmé zóu? 怎么走？ How do I get there?/How do I get to...?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese Characters</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zhēn kěxi!</td>
<td>What a shame!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhēn qiào</td>
<td>What a coincidence!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhēn sī</td>
<td>pure silk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhèxiē</td>
<td>these</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhī xíng</td>
<td>the trip to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhīdào</td>
<td>to know/to be aware of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhīyǒu</td>
<td>only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhōng</td>
<td>kind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhōngguó</td>
<td>China</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhōngwén</td>
<td>Chinese [as a language]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhōngzuó</td>
<td>secondary/middle school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhōngyú</td>
<td>at last/finally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhōnmò</td>
<td>weekend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhù</td>
<td>to live</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhuàngguān</td>
<td>to be magnificent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhùányè</td>
<td>subject/major</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zìxíngchē</td>
<td>bicycle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zìyóu</td>
<td>free/freedom/to be free</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zōu</td>
<td>to leave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zóu</td>
<td>to walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zǔguò de</td>
<td>enough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zui</td>
<td>most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zűi hǎo</td>
<td>best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuíháo</td>
<td>ideally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuíhòu</td>
<td>the last</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuíjìa</td>
<td>recently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zúo</td>
<td>to sit/to sit down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuò</td>
<td>to take (e.g. bus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuó</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuótiān</td>
<td>yesterday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuǒyòu</td>
<td>about/approximate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a little/some</td>
<td>diǎnr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a little bit</td>
<td>yídīn/yǒu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a quarter of a kilo</td>
<td>bān jīn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a small plate</td>
<td>yí xiǎo pán</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>about, approximate</td>
<td>zuǒ yòu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after/in/...later</td>
<td>hòu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afternoon</td>
<td>xiānwǔ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ago/before</td>
<td>qīán</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ahead</td>
<td>qīnmían</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all</td>
<td>dōu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all</td>
<td>suǒyóude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all right</td>
<td>hǎi hào</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all right/fine</td>
<td>hào ba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all the time</td>
<td>yǐzhǐ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>almost</td>
<td>jīnù</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>already</td>
<td>yǐjīng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>also, too</td>
<td>yě</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>altogether</td>
<td>yǐgōng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American and</td>
<td>Méiguórén</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>answer</td>
<td>hē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>any/anything</td>
<td>húidá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anybody/somebody</td>
<td>shénme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anything else</td>
<td>yǒu rén</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>any time/whenever</td>
<td>biéde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apple</td>
<td>shénme shíhou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approximately/</td>
<td>dàyuè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrive</td>
<td>píngguó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as...then</td>
<td>dàolái</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>jírán ... jù...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wèn</td>
<td>ask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ràng</td>
<td>ask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zài</td>
<td>at/in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhōngyú</td>
<td>at last/finally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zānshì</td>
<td>temporarily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cānjíá</td>
<td>attend/to take part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kāi hui</td>
<td>attend a meeting/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to attend a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>conference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bāyuè</td>
<td>August</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qūliàn</td>
<td>autumn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dājìé</td>
<td>avenue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiāngjiāo</td>
<td>banana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yínháng</td>
<td>bank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wēishēng jiān</td>
<td>bathroom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shí</td>
<td>be (am, is, are)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piàoliáng</td>
<td>be beautiful/to be beautiful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāng</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niúròu</td>
<td>beef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pǐjū</td>
<td>beer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zūi ... zhí qián</td>
<td>before.../by...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Běijīngrén</td>
<td>Beijing person/people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zìxíngchē</td>
<td>bicycle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dà</td>
<td>big/long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dōng</td>
<td>block</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bái mǐ fān</td>
<td>boilded rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shū</td>
<td>book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shūdiǎn</td>
<td>bookshop</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
boss
breakfast
bring/take
Britain
British
bureau/office
busy/to be busy
but
buy
call/to be called
can/could
can/to be able to
car/bus
celebrate/to spend
change
cheap/to be cheap
check
chicken
children
China
Chinese
(as a language)
Chinese New Year
city
classmate
coffee
collect/to meet
(somebody)
colour
come/to come to
come from...
comfortable/to be comfortable
company
contain
could/can/may
country
crossroads
Damn it!
dark/to be dark
date
daughter
lǎobān
dáì
Yīngguó
mǎng
dānshí
mǔ
jiāo
néng
huǐ
chē
piányǐ
chá
Zhōngguó
Zhōngwén
dày
tián
qín'ài
duì
jüé
dé
dì
zhì
shēng
yī
dì
sì
fāchē
bāihuò
shāngdiān
fū
ji díng
méi tīng qīng
nán
shāngliang
gàn
bì
hǎishi
shuāngrèn
fāngjiān
hé
yā
zào
dōng
chǐ
bā
gē
gē
Yīlǐshābái
zūgōu
dé
wǎnshāng
mèi
yíqiè
guì
gōngsì
hán
kěyì
fù
yǔ
jū
fēn
shuāng
shēng
gōng
hào
nǚ'ěr
di
diān
duì
yuè
zhē
shēng
yīng
fā
bāihuò
shāngdiān
fū
ji díng
méi tīng qīng
nán
shāngliang
gàn
bì
hǎishi
shuāngrèn
fāngjiān
hé
yā
zào
dōng
chǐ
bā
gē
gē
Yīlǐshābái
zūgōu
dé
wǎnshāng
mèi
yíqiè
guì
gōngsì
hán
kěyì
fù
yǔ
jū
fēn
shuāng
shēng
gōng
hào
nǚ'ěr
finish work
first
first of all
fish
floor/layer
follow
forget
frankly speaking/to be honest
free/freedom/to be free
fresh
friend
from...to
fruit
get off
get up
happy/to be happy
hard-sleeper
have to/must
have a look
xiàbān
dì
diá
diān
duì
duì
yuè
zhē
shēng
yī
dì
sì
fāchē
bāihuò
shāngdiān
fū
ji díng
méi tīng qīng
nán
shāngliang
gàn
bì
hǎishi
shuāngrèn
fāngjiān
hé
yā
zào
dōng
chǐ
bā
gē
gē
Yīlǐshābái
zūgōu
dé
wǎnshāng
mèi
yíqiè
guì
gōngsì
hán
kěyì
fù
yǔ
jū
fēn
shuāng
shēng
gōng
hào
nǚ'ěr
I'm sorry/
Excuse me
ideally
if
in fact
in that case
include/to have inside introduce
Is it all right?/OK?
Is it OK?
Is that so?
It depends
It doesn't matter/
It's all right/
It's OK
it feels . . .
it is (somebody's) turn to . . .
it's a long story
January
journey/trip
July
just
just a second
key
kind
king prawn
know (somebody)
know/to be aware of
last
last minute/temporary
last year
late
learn/to study
leave
left
lend
let/to allow
letter
light bulb
like
listen carefully
listen to
little/small/young live
local
look around
look for
look/to seem
lunch
lychee
make telephone calls/to telephone
make time
male
management
manager
many apologies
many thanks
many/much
map
market
meet
meet(somebody)
mention/to talk menu
minute
Miss
money
month
more
more than/over
jìe
ràng
xìn
lái
diándèng
xīhuàn
tīng hào
tīng
xiào
zhū
dǎngdī
Lúndún
jiǔ
cháng
guǎng
zhào
kānshàngqu
wǎnfān
lǐzhī
dádiànhuà
chóu kòng
nán
nán de
guǎnli
jīngli
zhèn bāoqián
duō xié
hěnduō
dìtú
shícháng
jiānmiàn
jiándào
shùqū
cāidān
fēn
fènzhēng
xiāojie
qián
yuè
duō
duō
morning
most
mother/mum
Mr
Mrs
must
name
near by/close by
nearly
new/to be new
next
next door
next stop
next time
next year
nice/to be nice
ten/one
twelve
nineteen ninety-four
no
no/incorrect
no need/do not need
no problem
noodles
not
not bad
not easy to find
not really/not at all
now
number
o'clock
October
of course
office
often/always/frequently
OK
old/to be old
once again
one
zǎoshàng
zú
máma
xiānshēng
tàitái
bīxī
míngzì
fūjīn
kuài
xià ge
géhī
tīng yí zhàn
xià cì
míng nián
hǎo/hào qù
yǐjūjūsì nián
bù shí
bù dui
bù yòng
méi wèntí
miàntíào
bú
méi/méi yǒu
bù cuò
bù hào zhào
ná
méi shénme
xiànzáì
háomā/čí/háo
dǎn
shíyuè
dānggrǎn
bàngōngshì
cháng
hǎo de
lǎo/dà
zài
yōo
one
cup
one day . . .
only
open/to be open
orange juice
order (food)
other
ours/ours
pancake
parents
pass
peach
per cent
perhaps
person/people
photograph
pity that . . .
plan
please
pleased/to be pleased
plus
post-office
postcode
presents
problem
promise
public
pure silk
pure wool
quarter
relatively
quite good
quite well
railway station
rain/raining
really
real?
receive
recently
remember
yī bēi
yóu yí tiān . . .
zhīyǒu
kāi
chēngzī zhì
diàn cái
qī/tái/é
wǒmen
dìng
fúmǔ
dì
táozì
bāfēnzhī
yèxū
rén
zhàoqì
kē
dàsūn
qīng
gāoxìng
jīa
yǒu jù
yòubǐan
fù
wèntí
bǎozhēng
gōngyǒng
zhēn sì
chún máo
kē
bǐjiào
bù cuò
bù guó
huóchē zhàn
xiàyǔ
zhēn
zhēn de?
shǒu dào
zújīn
jīde
repair  report  require/need  rest/to take time off work  restaurant  restaurant/dining-room  retired/be retired  return  return (the change)  return/to give back  ride  right/by the way  roast  room  route/road  same  sauce  scarf  scenery  seafood  season  seasonal  vegetables  secondary/middle school  secretary  see/to visit/to watch/to read  see/to handle  see you again  see you later  sell  send for someone  seven  several  she/her  shop  should/ought  side  silk  

xiū  báo gào  xiū yào  xiū xi  cānguān  cāng fēng  tuǐ xiū  huí lǐ  zhào  huán  qí  duì le  kāo  fāngjiān  lù  yì yáng  jiāng  wēi jīn  fēng jīng  hái xiān  jījí  shí cài  zhōng xué  mí shū  kàn  rǎng rén  qì  jì  tā  shǎng diàn  yǐng gāi  biān  sí chōu  dān  zuò  qīng kuàng  shuí jiào  mān  xī shōu hǎi  xiǎo lóng  shūn fēi  xiā xiē  zé mé  ruán wò  yǐ xiē  ér zi  kuài  tāng  shūo  chūn tiān  è sì le  dà  bāo zi  ē huí  chāo  chāo méi  zhū nán yè  zhāo dào  xià tiān  xìng qī tiān  Tài bāng le!  mào yī  táng cù  yóu yòng  yóu yòng chì  dàì  pāi  zuò /chēng  tún huá /tán  

shuí qǐ  cháng  biāo yì  chá  diàn huà  gòu  jiāng jiāng  shí  xiè xī  nà  jiù shí  nà gě nǐ de  dì yì cì  dì ěr tiān  Chánghéng  dà de  zuī hòu  jiù shí  xiǎo de  zhì xìng  nàr  zhē xí  shí  dòng xī  jué de  sān shí ěr  zhē  jǐn tiān  wàn shǎng  zhē jiān shí  zhē ci  zhē ge zhōu mò  jīn nián  piào  shǔ piào chū  lǐng dài  shuí jiàn  gēi  kàn de jiàn  to be angry/ to be cross  to be at/to be in  to be away/to go away  to be beautiful/ beautiful  to be big/to be large  to be clear/clearly  to be closed/to close  to be cold/cold  to be compared with  to be enough  to be excited/ exciting  to be fast  to be friendly/ friendly  to be full  to be going to  to be good/to be well/to be fine  to be hot/hot  to be interesting/ interesting  to be magnificent  to be married  to be noisy  to be OK/can do  to be open/to open  to be received by  . . . to receive  to be romantic/ romantic  to be smart/smart  to be sold out  to be successful/ success  to be the same  yī yáng
Appendix A
Useful signs

The characters introduced in the book are simplified characters. In this appendix, complex characters (traditional form) are placed alongside their simplified versions wherever they differ from their simplified version. This appendix consists of those character signs that are introduced at the end of each lesson in the book and some other useful signs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simplified form</th>
<th>Complex form</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Lesson</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>北京</td>
<td>Beijing</td>
<td>Běijīng</td>
<td>Beijing (Peking)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>男</td>
<td>nán</td>
<td>nǚ</td>
<td>Men’s</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>女</td>
<td>fàndiàn</td>
<td>hòu</td>
<td>Ladies’</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>饭店</td>
<td>Shànghǎi</td>
<td>[place name]</td>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>餐厅</td>
<td>Xi‘án</td>
<td>[place name]</td>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>旅游局</td>
<td>Guilin</td>
<td>[place name]</td>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>商店</td>
<td>Guangzhou</td>
<td>[place name]</td>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>银行</td>
<td>Changcheng</td>
<td>[place name]</td>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>邮局</td>
<td>Xiāng Gáng</td>
<td>[place name]</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>菜单</td>
<td>Taiwan</td>
<td>[place name]</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>餐馆</td>
<td>Hong Kong</td>
<td>[place name]</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>厕所</td>
<td>Hángguó</td>
<td>[place name]</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>银行</td>
<td>Gòngfūn</td>
<td>[place name]</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>邮局</td>
<td>Tiāntán</td>
<td>[place name]</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>菜单</td>
<td>Liúxíng shè</td>
<td>[place name]</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>餐馆</td>
<td>fěi jī chǎng</td>
<td>airport</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>厕所</td>
<td>Jinkaūn</td>
<td>entrance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simplified form</td>
<td>Complex form</td>
<td>Pinyin</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Lesson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>入口</td>
<td>rukou</td>
<td>entrance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>出口</td>
<td>chukou</td>
<td>exit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>问询处</td>
<td>wenxun chu</td>
<td>information</td>
<td>enquiry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>行李寄存处</td>
<td>xingli jicun chu</td>
<td>left-luggage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>蔬菜</td>
<td>shuceai</td>
<td>vegetable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>肉</td>
<td>rou</td>
<td>meat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>冷饮</td>
<td>lengyin</td>
<td>cold drinks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>素菜馆</td>
<td>susai guan</td>
<td>vegetarian</td>
<td>restaurant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>美元</td>
<td>meiyuan</td>
<td>US dollars</td>
<td>(US$)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>英镑</td>
<td>ying bang</td>
<td>sterling</td>
<td>(£)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>医院</td>
<td>yiyuan</td>
<td>hospital</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>警察局</td>
<td>jingcha ju</td>
<td>police station</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>理发店</td>
<td>lifa dian</td>
<td>barber shop</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>发廊</td>
<td>falang</td>
<td>hairdresser</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>博物馆</td>
<td>bowguan</td>
<td>museum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>出租车</td>
<td>chuzuche</td>
<td>taxi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>书店</td>
<td>shudian</td>
<td>bookshop</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>图书馆</td>
<td>tushiguan</td>
<td>library</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>电影院</td>
<td>dianyingyuan</td>
<td>cinema</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>服装店</td>
<td>fuzhuang dian</td>
<td>clothes shop</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>药店</td>
<td>yaodian</td>
<td>chemist</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>请勿拍照</td>
<td>qing wu pai</td>
<td>no photographs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>请勿吸烟</td>
<td>qing wu xian</td>
<td>no smoking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Appendix B
Additional useful expressions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Chinese (in pinyin)</th>
<th>Chinese (in character)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'm ill.</td>
<td>Wō bing le.</td>
<td>我病了</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ice</td>
<td>bīng</td>
<td>冰</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ice-cream</td>
<td>bìngjīng</td>
<td>冰激凌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magazine</td>
<td>zázhì</td>
<td>杂志</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>newspaper</td>
<td>bàozhǐ</td>
<td>报纸</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overseas Chinese</td>
<td>huáqiáo</td>
<td>华侨</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peking Opera</td>
<td>jīng jù</td>
<td>京剧</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post a letter</td>
<td>jì xìn</td>
<td>寄信</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postcard</td>
<td>míngxìnpiàn</td>
<td>明信片</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see a doctor</td>
<td>kàn yīshēng/kàn dàifu</td>
<td>看医生/看大夫</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send a parcel</td>
<td>jí bāogù</td>
<td>寄包裹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simplified characters</td>
<td>jiǎntí zì</td>
<td>简体字</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stomach-ache</td>
<td>dùzǐténg</td>
<td>肚子疼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take off</td>
<td>qǐfēi</td>
<td>起飞</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toothache</td>
<td>yá téng</td>
<td>牙疼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tourist guide</td>
<td>dǎoyóu</td>
<td>导游</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work unit</td>
<td>dānwèi</td>
<td>单位</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aeroplane</td>
<td>fēijī</td>
<td>飞机</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baggage</td>
<td>xínglǐ</td>
<td>行李</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boiled water</td>
<td>kuī shuǐ</td>
<td>开水</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese characters</td>
<td>hàn zi</td>
<td>汉字</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chopsticks</td>
<td>kuài zi</td>
<td>筷子</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cold water</td>
<td>liáng shuǐ</td>
<td>凉水</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complex characters</td>
<td>fán tǐ zì</td>
<td>繁体字</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connection</td>
<td>guān xì</td>
<td>关系</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cough</td>
<td>kē sou</td>
<td>咳嗽</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diarrhoea</td>
<td>lā dūzi</td>
<td>拉肚子</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>easy</td>
<td>róng yì</td>
<td>容易</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fever</td>
<td>fā shāo</td>
<td>发烧</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flu</td>
<td>gān máo</td>
<td>感冒</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreigner</td>
<td>wài guó rén</td>
<td>外国人</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>headache</td>
<td>tóu téng</td>
<td>头疼</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix C

Additional useful expressions

Table of the combinations of the initials and finals in Putonghua

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>F</th>
<th>a</th>
<th>o</th>
<th>e</th>
<th>er</th>
<th>ei</th>
<th>ao</th>
<th>ou</th>
<th>an</th>
<th>en</th>
<th>ang</th>
<th>eng</th>
<th>ong</th>
<th>i</th>
<th>i*</th>
<th>ia</th>
<th>ie</th>
<th>ia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>er</td>
<td>ei</td>
<td>ao</td>
<td>ou</td>
<td>an</td>
<td>en</td>
<td>ang</td>
<td>eng</td>
<td>ong</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>i*</td>
<td>ia</td>
<td>ie</td>
<td>ia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>ta</td>
<td>bo</td>
<td>bei</td>
<td>bao</td>
<td>tao</td>
<td>bao</td>
<td>ban</td>
<td>ben</td>
<td>bang</td>
<td>bang</td>
<td>beng</td>
<td>bi</td>
<td>biao</td>
<td>bie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>pa</td>
<td>po</td>
<td>pai</td>
<td>pao</td>
<td>pan</td>
<td>peng</td>
<td>ping</td>
<td>pi</td>
<td>piao</td>
<td>pie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>ma</td>
<td>mo</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>mai</td>
<td>mao</td>
<td>mou</td>
<td>man</td>
<td>mao</td>
<td>mang</td>
<td>meng</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>miao</td>
<td>mie</td>
<td>mian</td>
<td>min</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>fei</td>
<td>fon</td>
<td>fan</td>
<td>fen</td>
<td>fang</td>
<td>feng</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>da</td>
<td>de</td>
<td>dai</td>
<td>dai</td>
<td>dao</td>
<td>dou</td>
<td>dan</td>
<td>den</td>
<td>dang</td>
<td>deng</td>
<td>dong</td>
<td>di</td>
<td>diao</td>
<td>die</td>
<td>diu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>ta</td>
<td>te</td>
<td>tai</td>
<td>tao</td>
<td>tan</td>
<td>tang</td>
<td>tong</td>
<td>ti</td>
<td>tiao</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>ne</td>
<td>nei</td>
<td>nai</td>
<td>nao</td>
<td>nou</td>
<td>nan</td>
<td>nen</td>
<td>ning</td>
<td>nong</td>
<td>ni</td>
<td>niao</td>
<td>nie</td>
<td>niu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>le</td>
<td>lai</td>
<td>lea</td>
<td>liao</td>
<td>lan</td>
<td>lang</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>li</td>
<td>liao</td>
<td>lie</td>
<td>lia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>za</td>
<td>ze</td>
<td>zai</td>
<td>zai</td>
<td>zao</td>
<td>zou</td>
<td>zan</td>
<td>zen</td>
<td>zeng</td>
<td>zong</td>
<td>zi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>ca</td>
<td>ce</td>
<td>cai</td>
<td>cai</td>
<td>cao</td>
<td>cco</td>
<td>can</td>
<td>cen</td>
<td>ceng</td>
<td>cong</td>
<td>ci</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>sa</td>
<td>se</td>
<td>sai</td>
<td>sai</td>
<td>sao</td>
<td>sco</td>
<td>san</td>
<td>sen</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>seng</td>
<td>si</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zh</td>
<td>zha</td>
<td>zhe</td>
<td>zhai</td>
<td>zhai</td>
<td>zhuo</td>
<td>zhou</td>
<td>zhan</td>
<td>zhen</td>
<td>zheng</td>
<td>zhong</td>
<td>zhi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ch</td>
<td>cha</td>
<td>che</td>
<td>chai</td>
<td>chai</td>
<td>chao</td>
<td>chou</td>
<td>chan</td>
<td>chen</td>
<td>cheng</td>
<td>chong</td>
<td>chi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh</td>
<td>sha</td>
<td>shi</td>
<td>shai</td>
<td>shai</td>
<td>shao</td>
<td>shou</td>
<td>shan</td>
<td>shen</td>
<td>sheng</td>
<td>sheng</td>
<td>shi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>rao</td>
<td>rou</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>ren</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td>rong</td>
<td>ri</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>ji</td>
<td>jia</td>
<td>jiao</td>
<td>jie</td>
<td>jiu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q</td>
<td>qi</td>
<td>qia</td>
<td>qiao</td>
<td>qie</td>
<td>qiu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>xi</td>
<td>xia</td>
<td>xiao</td>
<td>xie</td>
<td>xiu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>ga</td>
<td>ge</td>
<td>gai</td>
<td>gai</td>
<td>gao</td>
<td>gou</td>
<td>gan</td>
<td>gen</td>
<td>geng</td>
<td>gong</td>
<td>gong</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>ka</td>
<td>ke</td>
<td>kai</td>
<td>kai</td>
<td>kao</td>
<td>kou</td>
<td>kan</td>
<td>ken</td>
<td>keng</td>
<td>kong</td>
<td>kong</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>ha</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>hai</td>
<td>hai</td>
<td>hao</td>
<td>hou</td>
<td>han</td>
<td>hen</td>
<td>hang</td>
<td>heng</td>
<td>hong</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* I stands for ‘initial’, F stands for ‘final’.
* See p. 4 for pronunciation.
Appendix D

English translation to dialogues after Lesson 6

Lesson 6

Dialogue 1: What day is it today?

T: What day is it today?
PA: Today is Tuesday.
T: How many days are there in a week?
PB: There are seven days in a week.
T: How many months are there in a year?
PC: There are twelve months in a year.
T: What’s tomorrow’s date?
PD: Tomorrow is 18th January 1994.
T: How many seasons are there in a year and what are they?
PE: Four seasons, and they are spring, summer, autumn and winter.

Dialogue 2: When . . . ?

M: Is it cold in Beijing in the winter?
L: Extremely cold. It often snows.
M: How about the summer?
L: July and August are very hot.
M: What is the best season?
L: Autumn, around October. Why, are you planning to go to Beijing?
M: Yes
L: When?
M: As you’ve said that October is best, I’ll go in October next year.
L: Are you going there to travel or to work?
M: Travel plus work.
L: How long are you going for?

Lesson 7

Dialogue 1: How much is it?

S: Hello. What would you like to buy?
A: I’d like to buy some fruit.
S: Have a look. We’ve got fresh strawberries, Hainan Island bananas and various kinds of apples.
A: What are these?
S: Lychees.
A: How much are they per jin?
S: Five kuai and eight mao.
A: I’ll have one jin of lychees. How much are strawberries?
S: Three kuai and nine fen per jin.
A: I’ll have half a jin of strawberries. Do you have peaches?
S: No, sorry. Anything else?
A: No, thank you.
S: Altogether seven kuai three mao and six fen.
A: Here are ten kuai.
S: OK. Here is your change - two kuai six mao and four fen.
A: Thanks.

Dialogue 2: It’s too expensive

D: Xiao Fan, are shops closed on Sundays?
F: No. All the shops, banks and post-offices are open. Why, do you want to do some shopping?
D: Yes. I’d like to buy several silk scarves for my wife, some presents for the kids and friends.
F: That’s not difficult. I can take you to the department store.
D: Miss, how much is this silk tie?
S: Two hundred and fifty yuan for one.
D: It’s too expensive.
S: Two hundred yuan, is that OK?
D: How about three hundred and fifty yuan for two?
S: All right, all right.
D: I’ll take it.
Lesson 8

Dialogue 1: Which is better?

P: Xiao Liu, these two jumpers, which one do you think is better?
L: I think the green one is better than the yellow one. Green suits you quite well.
P: OK. I'll take your advice.
P: Damn! I forgot to bring my wallet. Xiao Liu, could you lend me some money?
L: No problem. How much do you need?
P: Thirty yuan, is that OK?
L: Yes. Is it enough?
P: Yes, it is.
L: Here you are.
P: Thanks a lot. I'll definitely return the money tomorrow.
L: There's no hurry. Shall we go and have a look in the bookshop? I'd like to buy a couple of books.
P: OK.

Dialogue 2: It's a bargain

J: Sorry. I'm late.
Y: That's all right. I've just arrived.
J: I finished work early today and went to have a look-around in the street market.
Y: Is there any good stuff?
J: Yes, a lot. Shame I didn't have enough money with me. I bought er ... how do you say 'jumper' in Chinese?
Y: Maoyi.
J: Right. I bought a jumper.
Y: Let me have a look. (....) Really good. Is it pure wool?
J: No. It contains 80 per cent wool.
Y: It feels very comfortable. How much is it?
J: Over fifty yuan.
Y: It's really inexpensive. A real bargain. I like this colour very much. Are there any more of those left?
J: Dark red is sold out. This was the last one. But, there are many other nice colours.
Y: I'm not working tomorrow. I'll find some time to go and have a look.

Lesson 9

Dialogue 1: Ready to order?

W: Good evening! How many of you?
L: Three.
W: Follow me please.
W: Sit down, please. What would you like to drink first?
D: I'd like to have a Qingdao beer.
L: Same for me.
W: What would you like to drink, Miss?
J: A glass of orange juice.
W: OK. Please have a look at the menu.
W: Ready to order?
L: Yes. I'll order first. One seafood soup and one beef with fried noodles.
W: What about you, sir?
D: One hot and sour tofu soup, one diced chicken with seasonal vegetables and two liang of small steamed bread with fillings. I'm starving.
W: And you, Miss?
J: I'd like to have a small plate of deep-fried king-prawns, one sweet and sour fish and one boiled rice.
W: Alright. Please wait for a while.

Dialogue 2: Have you ever had roast duck?

Q: Have you had Beijing roast duck?
X: No, I haven't.
Q: Really. In that case, you've got to give it a taste. Are you free tonight?
X: Yes, I am.
Q: Then, I'm inviting you to have roast duck tonight. How does that sound?
X: Wonderful. Which restaurant are we going to?
Q: How about the Beijing Roast Duck Restaurant?
X: Super!
X: You were so right. It's delicious.
Q: I'm so pleased you like the roast duck. Have some more.
X: OK. Please pass me the sauce.
Q: Are there enough pancakes?
X: Enough for me. I'm nearly full. Ask for some more if you want more pancakes.
Q: In fact I'm already full. I eat faster than you do.

Lesson 10

Dialogue 1: Where's the toilet?

(a) Inside a hotel
YOU: Where is the toilet, please?
CHINESE: On the left of the dining-room.

(b) In the street
YOU: Is there a public telephone nearby?
CHINESE: I'm afraid not. Can you see the traffic light ahead?
YOU: Yes, I can.
CHINESE: When you get to the traffic light, turn right. I remember there is one there.

(c) In the street
YOU: Could you tell me which bus to take to go to the Railway Station?
CHINESE: No need to take the bus. It takes ten minutes to walk there.
YOU: How do I get there?
CHINESE: Turn east at the first traffic light.

Dialogue 2: Borrowing a bike

FRANK: Can I borrow your bike?
FEIXIA: Of course you can. Where are you going?
FRANK: Maybe Zhongshan University on Sunday.
FEIXIA: Do you know how to get there?
FRANK: No. But I think I can find it.
FEIXIA: I don't believe it. You'd better check the map first.
FRANK: Good idea. How long does it take approximately to cycle there?
FEIXIA: About an hour and a half.

Lesson 11

Dialogue 1: Fares, please!

B: Fares, please. Anybody?
A: Yes, I'd like a ticket to the zoo.
B: This bus is not going to the zoo.
A: What? Have I got on the wrong bus?
B: Don't worry. You get off at the next stop and change for Tram No. 18.
A: Sorry, I didn't hear it clearly. Please speak slowly.
B: You get off at the next stop and change for Tram No. 18.
A: Thank you. In that case, one ticket please. How much is it?
B: One mao.
P: I happen to change for No. 18. Please come with me.
A: Thank you very much.

Dialogue 2: Buying train tickets

C: Is this the ticket office?
T: Yes, it is.
C: I'd like to get a train ticket to Guilin.
T: When are you leaving?
C: Next Wednesday, that is 4th June.
T: Which number train to you plan to take?
C: I'm not sure. Ideally, round six o'clock in the evening.
T: How about No. 81? It departs at nineteen forty-five.
C: When does it arrive at Guilin?
T: It arrives at sixteen twenty the following day.
C: Good timing. I'll get a ticket for this train.
T: Would you like a hard-sleeper or soft-sleeper?
C: I don't understand.
T: A hard-sleeper is fifty yuan cheaper than a soft-sleeper, but not as comfortable.
C: I'll have one hard-sleeper.
Lesson 12

Dialogue 1: Any vacancies?

J: Do you have any vacancies please?
R: It depends. Do you want a single room or double room?
J: Single room, please.
R: How many days are you staying?
J: Three days.
R: Let me check. ... What good luck! There is one room available.
J: Do single rooms have bathrooms?
R: Yes, they do.
J: How much is it per night?
R: Two hundred and thirty yuan.
J: I'll take it.
R: Here is the key to your room. Your room is on the second floor.

Dialogue 2: The light is not working

D: Good morning. Did you sleep well last night?
J: To be honest. I didn't sleep well.
D: What's the matter?
J: Last night the room next door was very noisy all the time until early this morning.
D: Many apologies. I'll see to this matter.
J: Thanks. Oh, right, a light in my room is not working.
D: Really? I'll definitely send someone to fix it. Any other problems?
J: Not for the moment. See you later.

Lesson 13

Dialogue 1: Hello

A: Hello, could you get Li Man for me please?
L: I AM Li Man. Who is speaking?
A: It's Alan, Alan from Britain.
L: Really? When did you get here? How come I didn't know anything about it?

A: I came last Saturday. It was a last minute decision.
L: I'm so excited. When are you coming to see me?
A: Any time. You decide.
L: How about tonight?
A: Superb! Whereabouts do you live?
L: It's not easy to find my home. I'll come to collect you.

Dialogue 2: Telephone numbers

J: Have you finished with the phone?
Y: Yes, I have.
J: I'll give our boss a call.
Y: He is not in the office today.
J: Is that so? Do you have his home number?
Y: No. You could give his secretary a call and ask her for it.
J: Good idea.
S: Extension 268. Who is speaking please?
J: It's Jane. I've got something to discuss with Manager Zhang. I've heard he is not in the office today. Could you tell me his home number?
S: Yes, I can. Just a second, please. Listen carefully. The number is 462183.
J: 462183.
S: Correct.

Lesson 14

Dialogue 1: It's raining

Y: Is this your first time in Taiwan?
P: No. We come to Taiwan almost every year. Last year, we were here twice.
Y: Really? Why?
P: The first time, we came for my wife's younger sister's wedding. And the second time, it was for the Spring Festival.
Y: In that case, you wife must be Taiwanese, is that so?
P: Yes, she is.
Y: How did you get to know each other?
P: It's a long story. Ten years ago, she went to the States for her university education and we were classmates. One day ... Y: Very romantic. Whoops! It's raining. Let's go inside to talk.
**Dialogue 2: Which place do you like most?**

A: Hi, Graham. So nice to see you. Come on in. Please take a seat.
G: OK. Are you well, Ailin?
A: Quite well, thank you. What would you like to drink?
G: Chinese tea, please.
A: Talking about China, how was your trip to China?
G: Very successful.
A: Which cities did you go to?
G: Beijing, Shanghai, Si'an, Guilin and Guangzhou.
A: Which place did you like most?
G: It's a very difficult question to answer. I liked Guilin very much. The scenery there is beautiful. The locals are very friendly. It's very interesting to talk to them.
A: I haven't been to Guilin yet. I'll definitely go there next time. What do you think of Guangzhou?
G: I don't like Guangzhou that much. Too many people there, and also too hot.
A: I don't like Guangzhou either. I've heard that the Great Wall is very grandiose. Is that right?
G: Yes, it is. It's magnificent. I took a lot of photos . . .

---

**Lesson 15**

**Text: I promise**

Dear Xiaomei:
Hi!
I've received your letter. I'm so please that you like your new job. Everything is fine with me, except that I'm too busy writing a report. Every morning I've been up at six thirty and can't go to bed until twelve at night. I've got to finish this report by Friday. I know I haven't written to you for a long time. Please don't be cross with me. When I have some time off this weekend, I will definitely write you a long letter. I promise.

Good friend,
Elena

26.1.94

---

**Index to grammar and cultural notes**

The number in each entry refers to the lesson(s) where that entry occurs

- **adjectives**
  - demonstrative adjectives, 3
  - place names used as adjectives, 7
  - possessive adjectives, 1
  - verb-adjectives 1
  - verb-adjectives + sì le, 9
  - verbs used as adjectives, 7
- **affirmative sentences + xíng mǎ?/hào ma?, etc.**, 4
- **asking the price**, 7
- **ba**, 1
- **bàifēnzhì**, 8
- **bì**, 8
- **bié**, 11
- **bijiao**, 8
- **bù**, 1
- **bù cuò**, 11
- **bù hǎo + verb**, 13
- **cháng / chángcháng**, 6
- **chī bǎo le**, 9
- **Chinese dishes**, 9
- **chōu kòng**, 8
- **colours**, 8
- **common drinks**, 9
- **comparatives**, 8, 11
- **conditional sentences**, 9
- **cóng . . . lái**, 13
- **dài**, 8
- **dài . . . qù/lái**, 7
- **dào (until)**, 12
- **days of the week**, 6
- **de**
  - changing adjectives to nouns by adding de, 3, 6
  - linking two nouns with de, 3
  - more on the linking word de, 13
  - omission of de, 5, 13, 14
  - using de to link a verb or verb-adjective with an adverb, 9
  - using de to link a verbal phrase with a noun, 11
- **. . . de shìhou**, 15
- **děi**, 9
- **děng**, 9
- **dī**, 9
- **dī . . . chī**, 14
- **diàn cài**, 9
- **diàn(r)**, 14
- **difference between**
  - chī and wán, 8
  - dàyuē and zuò yòu, 6
  - duōshǎo and jǐ, 7
  - fēn and fēnzhòng, 4
  - gōu and zúguò de, 8
INDEX

hù and nèng, 10
hùōcē and liēcē, 11
jiānmìan and jiāndào, 3
jīn qū and jīn lì, 14
lái and dào, 8
lái and qū, 14
xià ge and xià yí ..., 11
xiāoshí and diān, 10
xīn, láixin and quxīn, 15
yáo and xiàng, 7
different terms for 'last', 'next' and 'this', 15
directional words qù and lái, 7, 10
dōu, 5, 14
duí le, 12
duìduī, 14
duō, 8
duō chī yǐxiē, 9
duō jiǔ, 6
duōsháo qián yì tiān?, 12
fàn, 14
foreign names, 5
gānghào, 11
ge (usage before years, months and weeks), 6
gēi, 5, 13
gēi ..., mū ..., 7
gēn, 9
gōu, 8
grammar words (particles), 2, 3, 9, 14, 15
greetings, 1
guāng, 8
guo (grammatical word), 9
hǎishí, 6
hào jiù bù jiān, 3
hé, 6
hén, 8
hòu, 15
... huái le, 12
huàn, 8
huányéng, 1
hui, 2
hui ... de, 5
jiā, 13
jiāo, 2
used to ask the time, 4
used to ask about small quantities of things, 5
used to ask the date and the day, 6
used to ask the price, 7
used to mean 'several', 7
used to ask which bus/train to take, 10
jìdè, 10
jìe, 10
' to lend', 8
' to borrow', 10
jìe, 13
jìntiān, 9
jírán ... jìu ..., 6
jìu, 3
jìu ... le, 10
kāimén, 4
kān, 5
kàn qíngkuàng, 12
kānshàngqu, 2
kēyì, 4
kinship terms, 5
kòng fāngjiān, 12
kuài (position of), 4
le
indicating a past action, 2, 3
indicating a guess, 14
indicating a change of state, 14
lǐ, 12
liàng (alternative of èr), 3
lúdào, 5
ma
used to form yes/no questions, 1
responding to questions ended with ma, 1
mǎi, 7
mái, 7
mǎi dōngxi, 7
máng, 3
measure words
usage, 3, 5, 6
use of wèi, 9, 13
use of píng, 9
use of zhāng and liàng, 11
use of jiàn and jiān, 12
use of tiào, 7
méi, 14
méi wèntí, 8
méi yǒu, 3
méi yǒu shǐjiān, 5
months of the year, 6
more dish names and vegetarian dishes, 9
nǎ, 2
nǎ jǐ ..., 14
nár, 10
nǎi, 2
names of countries and their people, 2
names and forms of address, 1
nǎr, 3
negate yǒu yìsi, 5
negation words, 1, 3
nǐ duó dà le?, 2
Nǐ gàn shénme gōngzuò?, 5
Nǐ jùde ... zénme yàng?, 14
nǐ shuō ..., 8
Nǐ tài hào le, 7
noun phrases (shortening of), 10, 12
numbers
0–99, 2
ordinal numbers, 10
ordinal numbers with measure words, 12
on Chinese buses, 11
prepositions
no prepositions in front of time phrases, 6
position of prepositions, 5, 7
pronouns
demonstrative pronouns nà and zhè, 3
omission of personal pronouns, 3
personal pronouns, 1
possessive pronouns, 1
qì, 10
qiàn, 14
qīng
(please), 1, 14
(to invite), 9
qīng fěng hào, 13
Qīng wèn, ... 2
Qīng wèn ... hǎo, 5
qīngkuāng, 5
question words (position of), 2, 3
ràng, 12
rén tài duō, 14
rènshí, 2
rúguǒ ... dehuà, 9
shàng in shàng bān, 5, 8
shéi, 3
shénme
used as question word, 2
used as pronoun, 3, 8
shénme difāng, 13
shénme shíhou,
used as question word, 6
used in statements, 13
shí
used to mean 'to be', 1
used for emphatic purpose, 3
used at the beginning of sentences, 13
shí ... de, 13
shí bù shí ... ?, 4, 5
showing concern over one's parents, 5
suoyóude ... dòu ..., 7
tài ... le, 1
táitái, 5
telephone expressions, 12
tell the time, 4
time-related phrases (position of), 3
fíng, 8
titles, 1, 5, 7
tóng, 13
topic structure, 2, 14
unit of weight, 7, 9
verbs
add wán after some verbs, 13
omission of the second syllable in a two-syllable verb, 4
repetition of one-syllable verbs, 8
two verbs in one sentence, 1
verbs used to articulate an idea expressed in English with a preposition, 14
wán (used after some verbs), 13
wàng, 8
wáng ... guài, 10
ways of referring to different languages, 2
wèi (used on the phone), 13
wǒ gòu le, 9
wǒ yào le, 7
wǒ yě yìyáng, 9
wǒ yījīe hái hǎo, 15
writing a letter, 15
writing an envelope, 15
xià bàn, 8
xiǎngxìn, 10
xiānshēng, 1, 5
xiǎojie, 7
xiūyào, 10
yào, 10
yáo, 13
yě
position of yě, 1
negative sentences with yě, 14
year and date, 6
yes/no questions
formed by adding mú, 1
formed by the pattern 'subject + verb + hú + repetition of the verb', 4
yī (omission of), 8
yídiǎn, 2
yījǐng ... le, 4
yǐxìa, 3
yǐzhí, 15
yǒu, 4, 10
yǒu biàn, 10
yǒu kòng, 9
yǒu méi yǒu, 7
yǒu rén ..., 11
yǒu shíjiān, 5
zái, 5
zái ... zhí qián, 15
zénme, 6, 8
zénme hú shì?, 12
zénme yàng?, 3
zéme zǒu?, 10
zhǎo, 7
zhǎo dào, 10
zhe (used after máng), 15
zhèr, 10
zhídào, 2
... zhī xíng, 14
Zhōngshān Dàxué, 10
ziyóu shìchǎng, 8
zōu, 11
zúi, 6
zuò, 14
zuòbiàn, 10
zuòyòu, 2